

# LATIN AT SIGHT

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, SUGGESTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING, AND  
SELECTIONS FOR PRACTICE

BY

EDWIN POST



BOSTON, U.S.A.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

1895





COPYRIGHT, 1894  
By EDWIN POST

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED



## PREFATORY NOTE.

---

THIS little book is an outgrowth of a teacher's attempt to teach Latin. The greater part of it was prepared in 1886, but any further attention to it was precluded by a prolonged absence from America. The *Introduction* is intended for teachers rather than for pupils. No attempt has been made to divide the book into "Lessons," but it is believed that the running catch-words will facilitate its use. The grammar references are to the books of Allen and Greenough (abbreviated A. and G.), Gildersleeve (G.), and Harkness (H.). It goes without saying that these pages are not so much intended for persons who can read Latin as for those who desire to learn how to do so, — both for such as have, after a considerable expenditure of toil and patience, thus far failed to learn, and for those who are more fortunate in that they have not yet tried and failed.

The second part on *How to Read* is followed by about one hundred and eighty *Selections for Practice*. Some attempt has been made to graduate these Selections.

While I would not fail to recognize the work of the pioneers in this field, to whom I owe much of whatever success I may have had in this line of endeavor, and to whom reference is more directly made in these pages, I feel myself under especially great obligation to Professor J. B. Greenough of Cambridge, to whose hints (see Preface to the A. and G. edition of Cicero's Orations, 1886) and criticism this attempt to help those, who desire to learn, owes much of whatever value it may have. Of my friends, who have helped me by critical reading of the proof sheets

I am especially indebted to Professor C. E. Dixon of Olivet College, Michigan, and to Mr. A. I. Dotey, M.A., of the Indianapolis High School.

I have found my best reward for a piece of work, not altogether pleasant, in the hope that earnest students might from these pages come to believe that reading Latin is a thing reasonable and possible, and not merely "a school-master's dream."

E. P.

DE PAUW UNIVERSITY:

26th July, 1894.

# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	I
HOW TO READ AT SIGHT . . . . .	II
SELECTIONS FOR PRACTICE IN TRANSLATION :	
1. A Valuable Hen *	47
2. The Story of Tarpeia (Aurel. Victor c. 2)	47
3. Borrowed Clothing . . . . .	48
4. The German Bison (Caesar: B. G. 6. 28)	48
5. Might makes Right . . . . .	49
6. A Home Thrust (Cicero: de orat. 2. 68)	49
7. Discretion the Better Part of Valor . . . . .	50
8. Sour Grapes (Phaedrus 4. 3)	50
9. The Ancient Germans (Caes.: B. G. 6. 21)	50
10. An Unfortunate Musician . . . . .	51
11. Poor Pay. . . . .	51
12. 'United we stand, divided we fall' . . . . .	52
13. A Noble Enemy (Eutropius 2. 14)	52
14. Ambition that overleaped Itself (Phaed. 1. 24)	53
15. Too Much High Living . . . . .	53
16. Spartan Courage (Cic.: Tusc. Disput. 1. 42. 101)	54
17. Circumstances alter Cases . . . . .	54
18. Nature has divided her Gifts . . . . .	54
19. Learning by Observation . . . . .	55
20. How M. Valerius got the Name 'Corvus' (Eutrop. 2. 6)	55
21. Be content with thy Lot . . . . .	56
22. An Old Man's Interview with Death . . . . .	56
23. Overjoyed! (Aulus Gellius 3. 15. 4)	57
24. The Dog in the Manger . . . . .	57
25. Beware of a Flatterer . . . . .	57
26. Cold Comfort . . . . .	58

\* The selection is taken from Jacob's Latin Reader, where no source is given after the title.

	PAGE
27. The Sensible Goat . . . . .	58
28. Let well enough alone . . . . .	59
29. The Price of Good Living . . . . .	59
30. Athens' 'Wooden Walls' (Cornelius Nepos : Themis. 2)	60
31. The Famous Horse of a Famous General (A. Gell. 5. 2)	60
32. The End of Hannibal (Corn. Nep. : Hannib. 12)	61
33. An Effeminate Monarch (Iustinus 1. 3)	62
34. A Lesson in Good Manners (Cic. : de senect. 18. 63)	63
35. 'Necessity the Mother of Invention' illustrated (Corn. Nep. : Eum. 5. 3)	64
36. Alexander enters Babylon (Quintus Curtius 5. 1. 17)	64
37. Reynard at his Tricks (Phaed. 4. 8)	66
38. How a Boy's Tongue was unloosed (A. Gell. 5. 9)	66
39. A Primitive Picture (Caes. : B. G. 4. 1. 3)	67
40. An Odd Way to win a Suit-at-law (Cic. : de senect. 7. 22)	67
41. The Oath of the Boy Hannibal (Corn. Nep. : Hannib. 2. 2)	68
42. A Cold Bath (Iust. 11. 8)	69
43. Faithful unto Death (Cic. : de offic. 3. 10. 45)	70
44. The Man Caesar (Sueton. : Divus Iulius 45 and 57)	70
45. Caesar's Assassination ( <i>Jb.</i> 82)	72
46. Dying Twice (Phaed. 1. 21)	73
47. An Oriental Queen (Iust. 1. 1. 9)	73
48. Not Alone, although Alone (Cic. : de offic. 3. 1)	74
49. An Indian Desert and its People (Q. Curt. 9. 10. 8)	74
50. The Old Arcadians (Ovid. : Fasti 2. 289)	75
51. A Sporting Man's Lament (Cic. : de senect. 9. 27)	76
52. One of the 'Seven Wonders of the World' (A. Gell. 10. 18)	77
53. Cimon, the Open-handed Athenian (Corn. Nep. : Cimon 4)	78
54. A Slow General who had Ready Wit (Cic. : de senect. 4. 10)	79
55. A New Style of Hunting (Phaed. 1. 11)	80
56. The Dolphin (Pliny : Nat. Hist. 9. 8 (7). 20)	81
57. A Nomadic People (Iust. 2. 2. 1)	81
58. Circumstances alter Cases (A. Gell. 2. 2. 13)	82
59. Too Much Felicity ( <i>Jb.</i> 3. 15. 3)	82
60. An Ugly Customer (Bellum African. 84)	83
61. A Near Relation to the Bull-dog (Q. Curt. 9. 1. 31)	84
62. How Hannibal hid his Money (Corn. Nep. : Hannib. 9. 1)	85
63. How Pompeius died (Caes. : Bell. Civ. 3. 103)	86
64. The Choice of a Husband (Cic. : de offic. 2. 20. 71)	87
65. The Founding of Rome (Liv. 1. 6. 3)	87

66.	Political Virtue <i>vs.</i> 'Practical Politics' (Corn. Nep.: Arist. 1. 1)	88
67.	The Pen Mightier than the Sword (Cic.: pro Arch. 10. 24)	89
68.	The Ancient Britons (Caes.: B. G. 5. 12. 3)	90
69.	The Destruction of Persepolis (Q. Curt. 5. 6. 3)	90
70.	How Old Fabius was tricked (Corn. Nep.: Hannib. 5. 1)	92
71.	Suicide of Cato Uticensis (Bell. African. 88)	93
72.	A Sacrilegious Tyrant (Cic.: de nat. deor. 3. 34. 83)	94
73.	A Roman Martyr (Eutrop. 2. 25)	95
74.	Cato the Censor (Corn. Nep.: Cato 24. 2. 3)	96
75.	A Traitor's Fate (Sallust: Catil 55)	97
76.	A Green Old Age (Cic.: de senec. 6. 16 and 11. 37)	98
77.	A High-spirited Indian King (Q. Curt. 8. 14. 35)	99
78.	A Bold Barbarian (Florus 1. 45)	100
79.	The Victor of Plataea dies in Disgrace (Corn. Nep.: Pausan. 4. 5)	101
80.	How Zopyrus recaptured Babylon for Dareus (Iust. 1. 10. 15)	103
81.	A Roman Oath (Cic.: de offic. 3. 31. 112)	104
82.	The Blind Timoleon (Corn. Nep.: Timol. 20. 4)	105
83.	A Brave and Patriotic Soldier (Corn. Nep.: Chab. 4)	106
84.	The Annihilation of the Teutoni (Flor. 1. 38. 3)	107
85.	A Military Genius (Corn. Nep.: Hannib. 1. 1)	108
86.	Cyrus the Great succumbs to a Woman (Iust. 1. 8)	111
87.	The Hero of Marathon perishes in the State-prison (Corn. Nep.: Milt. 7. 4)	112
88.	The Fate of the Cimbri (Flor. 1. 38)	113
89.	An Honest Patriot (Cic.: de offic. 3. 11. 49)	115
90.	The African Desert (Q. Curt. 4. 7. 10)	116
91.	The First Farmer (Tibullus 1. 7. 29)	116
92.	Alexander 'Unties' the Gordian Knot (Q. Curt. 3. 1. 14)	117
93.	How to whet an Appetite (Cic.: Tusc. disput. 5. 34. 97)	118
94.	A Wonderful Country (Q. Curt. 8. 9. 13)	119
95.	The Useful before the Beautiful (Phaed. 1. 12)	121
96.	From a Throne to the Gutter (Iust. 21. 5)	121
97.	The True Home of the Soul (Cic.: de senec. 23. 84)	122
98.	A Strange Way to fight a Battle (Corn. Nep.: Hannib. 10. 2)	123
99.	The Age of Saturn (Tibull. 1. 3. 35)	125
100.	'Babylon the Mighty' (Q. Curt. 5. 1. 24)	126
101.	How Cranes Migrate (Pliny: Nat. Hist. 10. 58. 30)	128
102.	Borrowed Feathers (Phaed. 1. 3. 4)	128

	PAGE
103. An Old Bachelor's Defense (Corn. Nep.: Epamin. 10. 1)	129
104. A Recipe for Happiness (Martial 10. 47)	129
105. The Hanging Gardens of Babylon (Q. Curt. 5. 1. 32)	130
106. A Famous Fight (Iust. 2. 11)	131
107. The Ant and the Fly (Phaed. 4. 24)	133
108. The 'Good Old Times' (Cic.: de senec. 16. 55)	134
109. A Narrow Escape from the Eels (Seneca: de ira 3. 40. 2)	135
110. A Novel Way to cross a River (Q. Curt. 7. 5. 13)	135
111. Curious Legislation (Iust. 3. 2. 5)	136
112. The Fortunate Islands (Horace: Epod. 16. 41)	138
113. A Model Young Lady (Pliny the Younger: Epist. 5. 16)	140
114. The Foundation of Carthage (Iust. 18. 4)	141
115. A Desperate March (Q. Curt. 5. 6. 12)	143
116. The Die is Cast! (Sueton.: Divus Iul. 31)	144
117. The Subjugation of the Horse (Phaed. 4. 4)	145
118. How Damocles lost a Dinner (Cic.: Tusc. disput. 5. 21. 61)	145
119. A Trick that did not work (Cic.: de offic. 3. 32. 113)	146
120. Enjoy the Passing Hour (Ovid: ars amat. 3. 61)	147
121. Alexander apes Achilles (Q. Curt. 4. 6. 25)	148
122. Alexander plays the Gentleman (Ib. 6. 2. 5)	149
123. Homo doctus in se semper divitias habet (Phaed. 4. 22)	149
124. How Horatius kept the Bridge (Livy 2. 9. 1)	151
125. The Making of an Orator (Cic.: de orat. 1. 61. 260)	153
126. The Opening Spring (Ovid: Fasti 5. 207)	154
127. An African Oracle (Q. Curt. 4. 7. 15)	154
128. Tribute to a Great General (Iust. 25. 5. 3)	156
129. A Grecian Ghost (Pliny the Younger: Epist. 7. 27. 5)	157
130. The Dandy and the Rustic (Phaed. 5. 5)	158
131. An Oriental Host (Q. Curt. 3. 3. 8)	160
132. Pompeius Magnus (Cic.: pro lege Manil. 11. 29)	162
133. The Lord of Creation (Pliny: Nat. Hist. 7. 2)	163
134. 'Music hath Charms' (Ovid: Fasti 2. 83)	164
135. 'Murder will out' (A. Gell. 16. 19. 1)	164
136. Alexander's Favorite (Q. Curt. 3. 12. 13)	166
137. Tempus fugit! (Cic.: de senect. 19. 69)	167
138. Why Alcibiades would not play the Flute (A. Gell. 15. 17. 1)	168
139. Be yourself! (Phaed. 3. 18)	168
140. An Old-time Roman (Livy 39. 40. 5)	169
141. A Remarkable Linguist (A. Gell. 17. 17)	170
142. A Miraculous Cure (Q. Curt. 9. 8. 20)	170

# CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
143. Cyrus the Younger (Cic. : de senect. 17. 59)	171
144. The Exile's Last Night in Rome (Ovid: Trist. 1. 3. 1)	172
145. Immortal Salamis! (Iust. 2. 12. 12)	174
146. Xantippe a Blessing in Disguise (A. Gell. 1. 17. 1)	175
147. The Fall of Tyre (Q. Curt. 4. 4. 10)	175
148. An Eclipse of the Moon (Livy 44. 37)	177
149. Personality in the Orator (Cic. : de orat. 3. 56. 213)	178
150. The Poet's Belief in his Literary Immortality (Ovid: Metam. 15. 871)	178
151. A Roman Abstainer (A. Gell. 11. 14. 2)	179
152. Despise Riches (Cic. : de offic. 1. 20. 68)	179
153. Two Great Kings in Battle (Q. Curt. 4. 15. 23)	180
154. Epaminondas' Last Fight (Corn. Nep. : Epam. 9)	181
155. The Enchantress Circe (Verg. : Aen. 7. 8)	182
156. A Boy's Joke (A. Gell. 1. 23. 4)	183
157. How C. Mucius lost his Hand, but won a Name (Livy 2. 12. 1)	184
158. The Victor vanquished (Q. Curt. 9. 7. 15)	186
159. All Dreams do not 'Go by Contraries' (Cic. : de divin. 1. 27. 57)	187
160. The Golden Age (Ovid: Metam. 1. 89)	188
161. Caesar did not forget his Veterans (Seneca : de benef. 5. 24. 1)	189
162. The Persian King at the Battle of Issus (Q. Curt. 3. 11. 7)	190
163. The Augur Attus Navius and his Razor (Cic. : de divin. 1. 17. 32)	191
164. The Easy-going Man (Verg. : Georg. 2. 490)	191
165. Nero's 'Golden House' (Sueton. : Nero 31)	192
166. How Themistocles fortified Athens (Corn. Nep. : Them. 6)	193
167. 'Coming Events cast their Shadows before' (Cic. : de divin. 1. 23. 47)	196
168. Primitive Men (Vergil : Georg. 1. 125)	196
169. An Orientalized Greek (Q. Curt. 6. 6. 1)	197
170. Man better than the Beast (Cic. : de offic. 1. 4. 11)	198
171. The Prayer of the Sensible Man (Juvenal 10. 356)	199
172. 'The Wit of One, the Wisdom of Many' (A. Gell. 17. 14)	199
173. Alexander murders the Man who had saved his Life (Q. Curt. 8. 1. 20)	200
174. The Condemnation of Socrates (Cic. : de orat. 1. 54. 231)	202
175. The Ages of Man (Hor. : de arte poet. 156)	203



	PAGE
176. An Object Lesson in Temperance (A. Gell. 2. 1. 4) . . .	204
177. The Wisdom of Nature (Cic. : de nat. deor. 2. 47. 121) . . .	204
178. The Death of Alexander (Iust. 12. 15. 1) . . .	206
179. The Cobbler as Doctor (Phaed. 1. 14) . . .	207
180. 'Give me back my Legions!' (Sueton. : Aug. 23) . . .	207
181. M. Cato <i>vs.</i> the Philosophers (A. Gell. 13. 24. 1) . . .	208
182. National Supremacy in the Balance (Livy 1. 24) . . .	209

## INTRODUCTION.

---

At no time, probably, in the history of classical controversy have the criticisms upon classical studies and their value as educational means been more numerous — shall we say more unfriendly? — than now. Some of the reasons for this are, —

1. The utilitarian character of the age, which demands immediate and “practical” results.
2. The far-reaching importance of scientific studies, arising from their commercial value and their close relation to our every-day life, as well as the attractive character of such studies.
3. The increasing value, especially for commercial and scientific purposes, of the modern languages, and the comparative ease with which a reading knowledge of them is acquired.
4. The proportionally great amount of time demanded for the Greek and Latin in *curricula* of study, thereby excluding other studies.
5. The (so-called) unsatisfactory results of classical study in view of the expense of time and labor compared with that required for certain other subjects.

These “results” are not so meagre as some facts would seem to warrant, but they are not, as many friends of the humanities admit, what improved books and appliances would lead us to hope for. Is it not reasonable to expect that an earnest learner shall, from a course of study extending

Present state of  
classical  
controversy.

Results of  
classical study.

over a period varying from five to seven or eight years, obtain something more than a *reading knowledge* of Latin? And yet, granting that much "discipline" is got, and not a little grammatical knowledge acquired, many—does not truth require us to say, most?—students who receive the bachelor's degree, have no confidence in their ability to read Latin, except with dictionary and grammar. That is, they have not read and cannot read Latin with a view to its importance as *literature*. They have too often read merely certain prescribed "selections" greater or less in quantity,

Reasons for  
unsatisfactory  
results.

rather than acquired any ability to read Latin as a language. Many reasons might be adduced in explanation of such results.

Two at least are prominent, viz.: inefficient (or mis-directed) teaching, especially during the period of preparation for the college, and bad habits of study.

Modern methods have so far emancipated us from the educational notions once commonly accepted, that we no

Faulty teaching.

longer cram a pupil with the Latin Grammar (exceptions, notes and all) before he is called upon to put to use any of the knowledge acquired, but it is yet too frequently true that the teacher neither has himself any *definite aim* in his teaching, nor does he set such an aim before his pupils as an inspiration to study. The great majority of boys who commence Latin are never made to understand, nor so much as told, that there is any objective result or end to their work. They are not encouraged to try to learn to read Latin as they are in the case of the modern languages. Consequently, if they start out with, or acquire, any enthusiasm in the work, they are apt to lose it.

The second cause of at least some of our failures every genuine teacher appreciates and deplors. The very general use, even by elementary pupils, of "ponies," "cribs," "inter-

linears," and like labor-saving helps has come to be regarded in many quarters as a necessary evil connected with teaching

Vicious habits  
of study.

Latin and Greek: "necessary" in the sense that no ordinary class questioning can to any extent obviate it, for every teacher knows that a boy reasonably well-drilled in the elements can use his "pony" and then prepare himself for the question-ordeal.<sup>1</sup> The latter may, or may not, detect the use of the translation; it cannot *per se* prevent it. Assuming these facts to be correct, any relief ought to be welcomed by the teacher. In some schools little or nothing remains to be desired, for in many places improved methods have displaced such as deserved to go; in others methods and results are alike poor.<sup>2</sup> Well-meaning teachers would seek a pleasanter and better way, if they could.

In a letter to the writer a classical teacher once used these words: "I believe that the salvation of classical studies in this country is to be found in sight-reading"—and the state of the case seems to justify the opinion. This ability to read Latin at sight should be the *first end* aimed at by the teacher in his teaching, and by the pupil in his study. The student should be made to understand *at the start* that his ability to read the language is the first and, perhaps for him, the only thing essential in his study of the language. *Until the pupil can read Latin well*, such subjects as com-

<sup>1</sup> Of course there is a legitimate and helpful use to which translations may be put. The remark above refers solely to the work of boys at a stage when *learning to translate* should be an important part of their work.

<sup>2</sup> An immense impetus to good teaching in secondary schools would result, if the college, instead of subjecting candidates for matriculation to examination on *certain prescribed books*, should require all to show *ability to read and write Latin and Greek* and should test knowledge of grammar, the elements of mythology, "antiquities," etc.

parative grammar and textual criticism should be severely let alone, and many students—perhaps the most—will never care, nor be able, to do more than learn to read Latin as literature. And in order to read Latin fairly well, much less grammatical knowledge is necessary than is often thought essential, *provided that it be thoroughly learned and perfectly at command*. How much grammar will suffice? Says Mr. D'Archy W. Thompson:<sup>1</sup>

"We find that all that requires unreasoning memory may be reduced to the following heads: (1) The five declensions, which include all adjectives and participles; (2) the rules for gender, and exceptions; (3) the four conjugations, active and passive, which latter voice includes *sum*; (4) the irregular verbs *eo, volo, nolo, malo, possum*; (5) Syntax: two pages. All this might easily be comprehended within twenty-four octavo pages."

While many teachers would doubtless take exception to this estimate and prefer to add to the quantum here prescribed, it is undeniably true that, if regard be had merely to the minimum necessary to a reading knowledge, much less is now insisted on or prescribed by the best introductory books than was formerly considered essential before the learner was allowed to read an author like Caesar.

What, then, is reading at sight, or extemporaneous translation? By it we mean reading Latin previously unseen, that is, getting the thought *in the order and form of the Latin itself* by adding one idea to another until the clause or sentence is complete,—although every word may not be clear at *first sight*—reading without a slavish dependence on lexicon

What is  
sight-reading.

✓ <sup>1</sup> 'Day Dreams of a Schoolmaster,' Edinburgh 1864, p. 62. — Many a live teacher has proved that the title of J. M. Whiton's 'Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Caesar' is not a misnomer.

and grammar. The amount read in a given time will, *ceteris paribus*, increase with practice.<sup>1</sup>

How can reading at sight be made practicable and easy? Certainly not by the unaided efforts of the teacher. And yet from him must emanate both inspiration and help, if the pupil succeed. How then can the teacher help his pupil to acquire confidence in himself and ability to read?

How to make it  
practicable  
and easy.

By insisting that reading-at-sight shall *in a natural way* commence early in the Latin course of study, even with the work in the "Latin Lessons" or "Principia." When the simplest paradigms of noun and verb have been learned, the teacher, using the vocabulary now at the learner's command, may form new combinations (phrases and even short sentences, as soon as the simple sentence is reached) both orally and on the blackboard for extemporaneous translation, and likewise until the reading of the first text is begun. But certainly, when the student begins to read his first author

Reading at sight  
must be  
insisted on.

regularly, reading at sight should be insisted upon. The case of the student once enslaved to the "pony" is well-nigh hopeless, but, if the early temptation be removed

or overcome, there is little danger that the student will fail to appreciate the better way. Let the teacher impress upon him the necessity of availing himself of every opportunity for practice, both in the preparation of his daily tasks and in special work. This should be consistently kept up. That is, he must somehow get daily practice and can most

<sup>1</sup> It is in some respects unfortunate that we have in our practice departed so far from good methods of teaching, that we are at last actually compelled to use an expression like "reading *at sight*" to mark the distinction between the prevailing habit of "digging out" the meaning by the assiduous use of grammar and dictionary and of seeking the meaning of the original in a sensible and natural way, as in the case of a modern language.

readily find it in connection with his regularly assigned work. But in the case of the average student, voluntary efforts in the line of special reading cannot be depended on. The teacher must in some way utilize the every-day work. To this end the *first* (private) reading of all his lessons must be at sight. Otherwise he will probably fail to get the requisite amount of practice, for class reading under the eye of the instructor cannot be frequent enough or sufficiently ample to ensure this desired amount, and, besides, in the sight-reading work the main business of the teacher will be to guide, to reiterate suggestions, and to see that the learner use the means at his command rather than to help the student *directly* over every difficulty, and thus preclude the very training that he needs, in order to learn to read rapidly. Without practice no person would expect the suggestions of a professional elocutionist, however valuable in themselves, to train the voice: with as little reason can the student expect that the efforts of the best instructor can do for him what, in the nature of the case, he must largely do for himself.

*How shall outside practice in reading at sight be enforced?*  
While encouragement on the part of the teacher can inspire hope and continued effort on the part of the best pupils, many will not exert themselves to do it, unless driven by fear of failure. Here certainly examinations can be practically utilized. In some schools passages to be read at sight have an important place in every paper set in both pass and final examinations. The value of this part of the paper might be gradually increased, if deemed best, and it would be a stimulus to outside effort on the part of the student, had he to work with a view to a final examination in reading at sight from a given author before being allowed

Which should be  
constant.

How to enforce  
practice in  
sight-reading  
outside of class.

to begin another. Pass examinations in translating passages previously unseen may be multiplied to any desired extent.<sup>1</sup> Other plans equally serviceable will doubtless suggest themselves to teachers who are in earnest.

A chief difficulty—the grammatical essentials being mastered—will be in the matter of vocabulary. How can it be obtained within a reasonable time?

How to obtain  
vocabulary.

Evidently some help must be given looking to this end. It is very helpful to assign

daily to the class beginning a new author a list of from five to ten basal or stem words taken from the lesson of the succeeding day.<sup>2</sup> These lists should be made most carefully, regard being had to correct etymologies, and they should be supplemented by such idioms as find a place in the author read, which may, so far as is possible, be explained to the class outright, unless they can be utilized and treated in the work of Latin composition by the class. ✓

In this way a learner may soon get nearly all the vocabulary necessary for the reading of an author, for most *derivatives* from the root meanings, that he already has, he may be presumed to know, or infer (in various ways to be mentioned hereafter), and, furthermore, the vocabulary ac-

<sup>1</sup> In his own work as a teacher the writer has insisted that, as a *sine qua non* of receiving credit in a session's work or upon an author read, the pupil must pass a certain number of the examinations in extemporaneous translation—the passages set being generally selected from the author read at the time by the class. It is sometimes useful to strike off by a hektograph or gelatin copying-pad in blank books of prescribed form the passages to be translated, so that the examination papers may be compared at the end of a term or year, these books being retained by the teacher except during the actual work of examination.

<sup>2</sup> This was suggested some years ago by Prof. J. W. White in a series of letters to the *New England Journal of Education*, and its practical wisdom has been verified with many classes of pupils.



tually necessary to read a given author is much smaller than is commonly supposed.

By frequent class practice the teacher can show the student how to translate. Opportunity for this can sometimes be secured at the end of a formal lesson, when the class can read in advance a portion of the next succeeding lesson.<sup>1</sup>

Besides, it is sometimes desirable for a class to read at sight regularly at least once a fortnight (or better, weekly) even at some sacrifice of the amount of text that might otherwise be read by the class. This class practice can be much varied according to the judgment of the instructor: one day the members of the class can translate individually and orally; or all in the class can be asked to translate the same passage on paper as at a written examination, the teacher at the end of the hour translating the passage for the students' benefit, or correcting and returning the papers subsequently; occasionally he may do both. In this work the blackboard can be frequently utilized. For the more formal practice in sight-reading it may be profitable, for at least a part of the time, to use selections easier than the author read by the class from day to day. More rapid reading can in this way be had; the subject matter will be fresh; the poorer members of the class will derive from the exercise more confidence and encouragement. In this class practice the teacher has opportunity to afford whatever help he judges proper: hints can be given; idioms explained; help, more or less adapted to individual needs, can be given. Sometimes it will be well, just before the reading begins, to give an epitome of the subject matter of the passage; proper names and historical allusions can be explained during the exercise, as occasion may seem to require. It should, how-

<sup>1</sup> This plan has the merit of securing the attention of even those ordinarily listless.

ever, be a rule never to pass over a sentence until thoroughly understood, unless it be assigned for subsequent study. While "judicious guessing" may sometimes be encouraged, sheer carelessness should never be tolerated.

What shall a class do outside the class-room (in lieu of the usual preparation for the class) upon the days devoted to class-practice? It is suggested that Outside class work. these days may be utilized for such reviews as do not require recitation in class; for the private reading of Latin to be passed on by subsequent examinations; for the learning of idioms and select passages of Latin; or for private practice in sight-reading. With some classes it may serve a good purpose to read at unexpected times, that is, to have no regularly appointed day for sight-reading. The regular lesson of the day may be rapidly translated by the teacher, thus affording the class a chance to hear a model translation, and in this way time may be gained for the sight-reading without abridging the amount of text regularly read.

Much of the regular class work may by the wise teacher be made helpful to that in sight-reading. Especially is this the case with the writing of Latin. Nothing can in importance take the place of composition as a means of getting a real understanding of a language. While there is not

Auxiliary work  
helpful to  
reading-at-sight.  
Writing Latin.

time in our schools to make "masters of style," a minimum of work in composition is as practically useful as it is necessary to a proper understanding of the syntax. Especially will this be found the case where a portion of the work in writing Latin is in imitation, or from translated portions, of the author read at the time by the class. While a weekly exercise in Latin composition may be necessary, it is desirable to have some class writing each day, if but a few sentences. This may be extempore blackboard work

or oral, but should be based upon the author read at the time.

Despite the limited time that can be given to Latin in our schools compared with schools in England and on the Continent, the learning of Latin passages ought not be wholly slighted, especially if the pupil is to write in imitation of the author he is reading. A sentence or two—especially if idiomatic—memorized each day will help in many ways, not the least in the getting of a working vocabulary.

Frequent reviews of the text read will be found very helpful in fixing vocabulary, idioms, etc. It is sometimes very profitable to review *orally* a part of the lesson of the preceding day, phrases in the original (or whole sentences, if short) being given out for translation, or the student may be asked to give the Latin from the English translation of the teacher. Of course, systematic reviews at stated times can be turned to good account. The pupil should be made to understand that in learning to read Latin rapidly, the thing most essential after a sufficient knowledge of elements has been acquired is *systematic practice in reading*;<sup>1</sup> that directions, hints, etc., are for those who need them,—are, indeed, but means to an end, and that “rules” and suggestions, when their application becomes easy and natural, will be outgrown and, perhaps, forgotten.

<sup>1</sup> Nothing herein stated is meant to imply that extended grammatical study has not a proper place. There is, perhaps, danger that in our revolt from old-time notions, we go to the opposite extreme and substitute mere fluency in translation for exact knowledge. This little book has in mind those whose chief business is to learn how to read.

## HOW TO READ AT SIGHT.

In getting at the meaning of any new sentence two main difficulties must be overcome: first, that arising from the Latin order and relation of words, and, secondly, the vocabulary or meanings of the new words.

At first sight it would appear that the difference between the Latin and the English in the order of words and clauses presents an almost insuperable difficulty to reading Latin readily. In English prose the order is generally regular, the relation of the words being indicated by *position* rather than by *inflection* as in Latin, where a greater diversity in the order of the words is common.

- I. The difficulty growing out of the relation of words and clauses (syntax), so far as it is concerned

Syntax.

with mere reading or grasp of the thought, is not ordinarily great—not so much so as

most teachers are disposed to make it. Many here make hard a thing reasonably easy, if approached naturally. The pupil should feel that the grammatical nomenclature applied to constructions, however valuable for other reasons, is to one who seeks only the meaning of the text rather a hindrance than a help. If, for example, a boy can associate a limiting genitive with the noun on which it depends, he ought to be able to see the meaning. The ability to recognize the genitive in *Ciceronis libri* as a subjective or any other sort of genitive is no *direct* help to seeing the meaning, and no one in reading it rapidly at sight thinks of it in that way. He thinks only of the two ideas as logically and grammatically connected, and, if he get the contextual

Elementary  
knowledge.

meaning suggested by *books of Cicero*, he looks no further. Of course, to do even this, the ordinary relations suggested by

inflectional changes cannot be overlooked and exceptional

usage must be recognized as matter of fact ; for example, that the ablative or genitive is found with certain verbs instead of the usual accusative.<sup>1</sup> Indeed, beyond a very elementary grammatical knowledge (including oft-recurring exceptions and the elements of indirect discourse) the boy needs nothing for ordinary Latin. This elementary knowledge, however, which in amount is, perhaps, less than what the introductory books contain, rather than in excess of it, must be really understood and well in hand. "Analysis" further than that necessary to recognize in a some-

Analysis vs. the  
Roman's way.

what unreasoning way the logical relations (precisely as one does in English<sup>2</sup>) and the grammatical relations suggested by the inflectional endings is not essential, in order to understand ordinary Latin prose. However serviceable it may be in rare cases, as, in sentences involved or badly constructed, to look to extended analysis in order to arrive at the meaning, it is in ordinary reading an inversion of the natural way. If the Roman did not seek the meaning of *his* Latin in this slow and irrational way—and who soberly claims that he did?—why must we do so? Even in the case of the long "period" with its succession of clauses, where the main idea is held back until the end of the sentence (A. and G. 345, Note on Structure ; G. 474 ; H. 573), the Roman grasped the thought not by reasoning as to the relation of the clauses, but naturally, that is, without conscious reasoning and *in the order of the Latin*

<sup>1</sup> The reader must understand and recognize as a fact an ablative with *utor*, but we render him no *direct* help towards getting at the meaning by requiring him also to think of it as a means or instrumental ablative. (A. and G. 249 and Note ; G. 405 ; H. 421, I. and foot-note 1.)

<sup>2</sup> How many English-speaking people cannot parse or even name the parts of the sentence ! Does any one question one's ability to appreciate the sense, because he cannot name the clauses that he sees and hears, as main or subordinate, temporal, causal, etc. ?

*words and clauses.* We may presume that he did this, as we ordinarily do in English, at first-sight or first-hearing. For us to learn to do this is harder than for the Roman,—just as it is apt to be hard for one to do it in any language not his mother tongue—because we do not and cannot acquire the necessary elementary Latin in the same natural way in which the Roman boy acquired his, for the reason that no one now begins to study Latin until he has passed the age in which a child acquires a speaking knowledge of his vernacular. But, because this is for us more difficult and more costly in time and trouble than it would be, could we study Latin as the mother-tongue, there is the greater reason why a habit of reading Latin naturally should be acquired as soon as possible. The elementary work from the very first on should have this in view.<sup>1</sup>

While ordinary English narrative is partial to shorter sentences and to a less formal arrangement of clauses than Latin, subordinate clauses, expressing relations of cause, time, condition, etc., are common enough in English. Long sentences (in poetry and sometimes in early prose writers) approaching the “periodic style” in length and arrangement, as well as inversion, are by no means rare and, when met with, are understood without surprise. What child old enough to read it, knowing the meanings of the words, would fail to get at once the sense of this? —

Inversion in  
English.

“The cow all white and red the boy  
Blithe to the pasture led,  
Its golden-rod all bright with joy  
Wherein that cow was fed.”

<sup>1</sup> Oral extempore work introduced into the “First Lessons” will further this greatly. The most sceptical will be surprised at the extent to which pupils will respond to efforts made by the teacher in this direction.

Yet here is surely inversion enough ! As a fact, more or less inversion is common in poetry and, when occurring in prose, is accepted as a matter of course. The inversion found in the King James' translation of the Bible is not a source of serious difficulty. Such a sentence as, "A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me ; him shall ye hear," or "Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you" is easily enough understood when heard or read. Occasionally in poetry even long, involved, periodic sentences are introduced and readily enough grasped when heard or read, and that without resorting to analysis and parsing. Take the following : —

" Meanwhile the new-baptized, who yet remained  
At Jordan with the Baptist and had seen  
Him whom they heard so late expressly call'd  
Jesus, Messiah, Son of God declared,  
And on that high authority had believed,  
And with him talked, and with him lodg'd,  
Now missing him their joy so lately found,  
So lately found and so abruptly gone,  
Began to doubt."

In a word, such difficulties as arise *solely* from the Latin order and from the relation of words as

Thinking in  
Latin.

contrasted with English are largely imaginary in the case of one who has been

rightly guided in his elementary work and who will subsequently seek to read in the right way. But to him who has made a bad start, who, having "studied at Latin" for two or three years, has not learned to read simple prose without momentary reliance on the lexicon, these difficulties appear very real. Even after such an one may have found out that the sequence of words and clauses is not a hit or miss matter, but that the connection and sequence is

regular,<sup>1</sup> this difficulty continues to seem formidable. Unless he make earnest effort to "think in the Latin," that is, to take in the *thought* in the Latin order (as the Roman did) without thinking of the *English* order and arrangement *necessary to a translation of it*, he will, probably, not learn to read with any facility.

Let us now by actual trial with different sentences see how easy it is to get the thought in the Latin order.<sup>2</sup> Let us, *thinking as little as possible about "analysis,"* try to do what the Roman would have done, — let each word suggest some conception, gradually adding to and completing the meaning of the writer. We will begin with some very simple sentences.

Examples.

1. **Caesar** Surely not much trouble there! But what about **Caesar**? — evidently a word of importance, and as such beginning the sentence. (A. and G. 343, 344; G. 675; H. 560.) — Let us see. The next word **ex** suggests at once the notion *from, out of*, etc. Followed by what case? But *from* what? We must do just what the Roman did, in order to find out, viz. — read on.
- eo loco** Plain enough now: *from that place*. But we must read on to find out what is said of **Cæsar**.
- Gergoviam** *Gergovia* (name of town; clear enough to any one familiar with the context). What about

<sup>1</sup> Subordinate clauses, in which the *next* verb to the "connective" is generally the verb of the clause, are easily enough recognized by the relative pronouns, interrogative pronouns (however, in indirect discourse only), and subordinate conjunctions, which introduce subordinate clauses and at the same time serve as "connectives" (A. and G. 345 f., edition 1878).

<sup>2</sup> At first we will take at a time but one or two Latin words of the sentence under consideration, partly to see just how much single words or short phrases will suggest, partly to emphasize the necessity of not reading rashly ahead of what is understood.



this town *Gergovia*? Evidently we must proceed with our reading in order to find out, although the reader sees at once an accusative and, it may be, asks himself "why accusative?" Even if he do not associate the name of a town in the accusative without a preposition, following a phrase like *ex eo loco*, with a certain verbal idea, the next word almost forces the sense upon him —

**pervenit.** O yes! *came through*, — *Cæsar came through to or arrived at. Caesar ex eo loco Gergoviam pervenit* — *Cæsar from that place to Gergovia came through, or arrived at G.*

2. Take another sentence :

**Quibus** An indefinite word until we have what follows. Why think of dative or ablative?

**rebus cognitis**, — recognized as, probably, an ablative absolute, **quibus** having its adjective or demonstrative force (A. and G. 201, c; G. 613; H. 453), but still *relating to something before mentioned. Which things having been found out* (by whom will appear), or better (for an attempt to render the ablative absolute literally is not generally well) *having learned this*.<sup>1</sup>

**Caesar consilium** Something about *Cæsar* and a *plan* or *purpose* — what? (Never mind yet about syntax of **consilium**. The *meaning* we may see: as to the *relation* we must suspend judgment and wait until we have more of the sentence.)

**capit** *Cæsar takes* — what? Why, of course, a *plan* or *his plan*, as the context shows clearly enough. Everybody in the class now recognizes **consilium** as the object of the verb, but one almost without

<sup>1</sup> The ablative absolute with regard to its uses and to its rendering into idiomatic English should be especially studied.

conscious reasoning associates **consilium** and **capit** in their correct relation, having read the word **Caesar**.

**ex loci natura.** (Here we without delay get the phrase *as a whole*.<sup>1</sup>) The boy who knows his elements can hardly help associating **loci** and **natura** (the very position of **loci** between **ex** and the word thought of in connection with it almost precludes a blunder) and with that comes the meaning *from the nature of the place or region*. However desirable it may be for some reasons to know what sort of a genitive we have to do with here, it does not help to the meaning, and our reader will not think seriously of it, while seeking to find out what the author means. Here we have our whole sentence : **Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar consilium capit ex loci natura.** Translate it.

3. **Dum** You have had **dum**. You think at once, perhaps, of *while*, or *so long as*, or *until*. But suppose it should mean *until* with a purpose idea, or *provided that*? Don't try yet to determine what it means. Learn to leave, if necessary, the meaning in suspense, until you get (as the Roman must have done in the case of many words) enough of the sentence to enable you to see it.

**haec** (also uncertain in meaning, although the reader whose knowledge of phrases is considerable might guess)

**ad Gergoviam geruntur,** Now **Dum** is clear — for the mode of the verb **geruntur** settles any question

<sup>1</sup> From the very first should the learner form the habit of *associating words*, especially words where grammatical relation is suggested by the inflectional endings. Adjective should suggest noun, preposition the word governed, adverb the word modified, etc.

as to a possible *if only*, or *provided that* (A. and G. 276, c; G. 572; H. 467, 4); *haec* is also plain and the well-trained boy will not for a moment think that *ad Gergoviam* means *to Gergovia* (A. and G. 258, c, 2, N. 1; G. 410, R. 3). *While these things were taking place before, or in the neighborhood of, Gergovia.* Manifestly our sentence is as incomplete in Latin as is the English equivalent of it; we are interested to know what now took place.

**Aedui**, did, or were, something—for the dullest, especially if he has read any Cæsar, will not stumble over the case of **Aedui**—but did what?

**primis** means *first* simply; a little disappointing, perhaps, for we have yet nothing about the **Aedui**. Without querying at all as to the syntax of **primis** we add one word,

**nunciis**—enough to tell us (and without the syntax either) that we learn something of the *first messengers* or *messengers*. If we stop to think at all, it is not so much as to the construction of **primis nunciis** as to ask ourselves: *messengers* from or to whom? But

**ab Litavico** tells us at once: *from Litavicus* (a chief of the **Aedui**).

<sup>receive</sup>  
**acceptis**, *Messengers* were *received* from Litavicus, for we see at once the case-relation of **acceptis** and **nunciis**, although we may not think yet of the ablative absolute. Why should we especially do so? The idea without that is clear: *the first messengers received from Litavicus*. But we must not lose sight of the **Aedui**.

**nullum** Nothing yet, it would seem, about the **Aedui**. Simply *no*—what?

**sibi** *to or for themselves*—the **Aedui**, of course, for our

reader must know that *sibi* refers to the subject of the clause or sentence.<sup>1</sup> (A. and G. 196 foll.; G. 294, 520-522; H. 449.)

**ad cognoscendum**<sup>2</sup> *for finding out or investigating.*

**spatium** The temporary uncertainty as to **nullum** ceases with the expression of this word, for, if we see the meaning of **spatium**, we naturally see the connection, contextual and syntactical, between the two words and there is little danger of a persistent attempt to associate **cognoscendum** and **spatium**. We can almost guess the kind of a word that we should now have.

**relinquunt**—they *leave*, i.e., *the Aedui leave themselves no space (time) for finding out.*

Here is our sentence as a whole: **Dum haec ad Gervoviam geruntur, Aedui, primis nunciis ab Litavico acceptis, nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt.** Translate it idiomatically.

NOTE.—It is suggested that at this point and from time to time the teacher choose from the selections for practice at the end of the book easy passages for class-practice and that the sentences be written on the blackboard in the presence of the class, partly to encourage the pupils to try to get the thought in the order in which the words are written on the board, partly to afford opportunity for the asking of suggestive questions and for the giving of such hints as occasion may require.

Let us read some longer and differently built sentences.

4. **Erat** (something) *was.*

**vallis** *There was a valley*

<sup>1</sup> If not already understood, the various uses of *sui* and *suus* should be carefully studied.

<sup>2</sup> It is taken for granted that the learner knows *gerund* from *gerundive*. (A. and G. 109 b, 295-296; G. 426-432; H. 200 II. 541-544.)

*inter duas acies, between the two lines-of-battle.* To many readers **inter** will suggest an accusative construction, but, even though that be not immediately thought of, the sequence of thought as naturally follows **inter** in Latin as in English it follows the preposition *between*. Our next word (**ut**) is indefinite when seen apart from what follows, because of its many meanings. Without attempting to guess it, thereby probably getting in advance a wrong notion of the sense, we read the whole clause

**ut supra demonstratum est, as was shown** (mentioned) *above*. The mode of the verb tells us that **ut** cannot mean *in order that* or *so that*, (A. and G. 317, 319; G. 545, 554; H. 497, II., 500, II.) or *though* (A. and G. 266 c, 313 a; G. 605, 5, 610, 611; H. 515, III.), and no temporal idea (**ut, as soon as, when, since**) is called for by the context.

**non ita magna, What not so great?** The sense of the passage points unmistakably to **vallis**, even though the gender be not directly appealed to.

**at difficili but difficult.** The **vallis**? It would seem so, if context be looked to, but the reader, who is, of course, watching closely the inflectional endings, must see that, whatever case **difficili** may be, it cannot *grammatically* be associated with **vallis** (nom.). Perhaps the wiser thing is not to think so much about the possible syntax of **difficili** before associating it with what follows, viz. :

**et arduo adscensu — with difficult and steep slope.** Thus we see that after all we were not wrong at first in our attempt to associate **difficili** logically with **vallis** (for the slope of the **vallis** is referred to), although it syntactically agrees with another word (**adscensu**).

Our sentence, then, runs thus: *Erat vallis inter duas acies, ut supra demonstratum est, non ita magna, at difficili et arduo adscensu.* Translate it as a whole.

5. *Eo biduo*<sup>1</sup> *within this two-days*—a use of the ablative easy enough (for one properly drilled in elementary case-constructions) to be recognized at sight. (A. and G. 256; G. 392; H. 429.) *Eo* seen with *biduo* will hardly be mistaken for the adverb (*thither*). Notice the emphatic position of the phrase.

Caesar *cum equitibus nongentis*, *Cæsar with 900 horsemen* seems natural enough, for, taking in the phrase at a glance, there is no impulse to quibble about the meaning of *cum*.

*quos* *whom*. It is presumed that our reader is beyond thinking of *quos* as *who* instead of *whom*. We no more fail in Latin to see at once to whom the *quos* refers (having properly understood what precedes *quos*), than we misunderstand to whom the word *whom* refers in the English *with 900 cavalrymen, whom, etc.*?

*sibi praesidio reliquerat*, *he had left, i.e., kept as a guard* (body-guard) *for himself*. None other than Cæsar could have done it, for no new subject is introduced as the subject of *reliquerat*. The double dative, too, is elementary enough (A. and G. 233 a; G. 350; H. 390). But what about Cæsar and his 900 horsemen?

*in castra pervenit*—*arrived at the camp* (lit. *came through the country to the camp* of Fabius).

*Pons, qui fuerat tempestate interruptus, paene erat reffectus*: *The bridge, which had been broken up by the storm, had been almost repaired or rebuilt.*

<sup>1</sup> *biduum, i.* (space of) *two-days*.

## INTRODUCTION.

**inter duas acies**, *between the two lines-of-battle*. To many readers **inter** will suggest an accusative construction, but, even though that be not immediately thought of, the sequence of thought as naturally follows **inter** in Latin as in English it follows the preposition *between*. Our next word (**ut**) is indefinite when seen apart from what follows, because of its many meanings. Without attempting to guess it, thereby probably getting in advance a wrong notion of the sense, we read the whole clause

**ut supra demonstratum est**, *as was shown* (mentioned) *above*. The mode of the verb tells us that **ut** cannot mean *in order that* or *so that*, (A. and G. 317, 319; G. 545, 554; H. 497, II., 500, II.) or *though* (A. and G. 266 c, 313 a; G. 605, 5, 610, 611; H. 515, III.), and no temporal idea (**ut**, *as soon as*, *when*, *since*) is called for by the context.

**non ita magna**, What *not so great*? The sense of the passage points unmistakably to **vallis**, even though the gender be not directly appealed to.

**at difficili** *but difficult*. The **vallis**? It would seem so, if context be looked to, but the reader, who is, of course, watching closely the inflectional endings, must see that, whatever case **difficili** may be, it cannot *grammatically* be associated with **vallis** (nom.). Perhaps the wiser thing is not to think so much about the possible syntax of **difficili** before associating it with what follows, viz.:

**et arduo adscensu** — *with difficult and steep slope*. Thus we see that after all we were not wrong at first in our attempt to associate **difficili** *logically* with **vallis** (for the slope of the **vallis** is referred to), although it syntactically agrees with another word (**adscensu**).

Our sentence, then, runs thus: *Erat vallis inter duas acies, ut supra demonstratum est, non ita magna, at difficili et arduo adscensu.* Translate it as a whole.

5. *Eo biduo*<sup>1</sup> *within this two-days*—a use of the ablative easy enough (for one properly drilled in elementary case-constructions) to be recognized at sight. (A. and G. 256; G. 392; H. 429.) *Eo* seen with *biduo* will hardly be mistaken for the adverb (*thither*). Notice the emphatic position of the phrase.

*Caesar cum equitibus nongentis, Caesar with 900 horsemen* seems natural enough, for, taking in the phrase at a glance, there is no impulse to quibble about the meaning of *cum*.

*quos* *whom*. It is presumed that our reader is beyond thinking of *quos* as *who* instead of *whom*. We no more fail in Latin to see at once to whom the *quos* refers (having properly understood what precedes *quos*), than we misunderstand to whom the word *whom* refers in the English *with 900 cavalrymen, whom, etc.*?

*sibi praesidio reliquerat, he had left, i.e., kept as a guard (body-guard) for himself.* None other than *Cæsar* could have done it, for no new subject is introduced as the subject of *reliquerat*. The double dative, too, is elementary enough (A. and G. 233 a; G. 350; H. 390). But what about *Cæsar* and his *900 horsemen*?

*in castra pervenit—arrived at the camp* (lit. *came through the country to the camp of Fabius*).

*Pons, qui fuerat tempestate interruptus, paene erat refectus:* *The bridge, which had been broken up by the storm, had been almost repaired or rebuilt.*

<sup>1</sup> *biduum, i.*, (space of) *two-days*.



## INTRODUCTION.

**hunc** *this*—bridge, of course, for there has been no personal word to which **hunc** can refer, and it will in any event be related to the nearest word to which it can be referred. (**Pons** is masculine as we might infer from **qui** standing next it.) *This bridge*, then

**noctu perfici iussit.** (Notice the voice of **perfici**, which should help to an understanding of **hunc**.) **Cæsar** *ordered to be finished*—it had been almost (**paene**) rebuilt before—*by night*. Translate the whole sentence: **Eo biduo Cæsar cum equitibus non-gentis, quos sibi praesidio reliquerat, in castra pervenit. Pons, qui fuerat tempestate interruptus, paene erat reffectus: hunc noctu perfici iussit.**

6. **Caesar, etsi intellegebat Cæsar, although he** (i.e., **Cæsar**, for in lieu of a new subject the verb **intellegebat** refers logically to the subject already mentioned) *knew, yes, was knowing all along* (note the tense)—what?

*for-what-reason*<sup>1</sup>  
**qua de causa ea dicerentur, for what reason that** (lit. *those things*) *was said*. Note that **qua** is used adjectively; that the voice of the verb (for the passive takes no object) settles any doubt about the indefinite form, **ea**.

\* \* \*

**tamen, nevertheless.**

**ne** (apt to mean *lest* or *that . . . not*) **aestatem in Treviris**<sup>2</sup>

*spend*  
**consumere** (something about spending or wasting the summer among the Treviri) **cogeretur, lest he**<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 44 on idioms.

<sup>2</sup> **Treviri, -orum**, a people living on the Moselle.

<sup>3</sup> We have had *no new subject* introduced.

*should be forced to spend (waste) the summer among the Treviri. But not a word yet as to what Cæsar did.*

omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus <sup>got ready</sup> comparatis, *everything being got ready (or better English, having got everything in shape) for the British war.*

This, although doubtless done *indirectly* by Cæsar (i.e., under his direction), does not tell us the main fact of interest. We must read still farther for that.

Indutiomarus<sup>1</sup> ad se (something about Indutiomarus and Cæsar himself — we can, thinking of the force of ad se = *to himself*, almost guess the verbal idea) cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit. We now understand Cæsar's action as regards Indutiomarus: *Cæsar . . . bade Indutiomarus come to him with 200 hostages.*

Notice here that, although we have one subordinate clause following another, all introduced in regular fashion by subordinate "connectives," the whole ending like a "period" with the main verb, although *we have not consciously analyzed the sentence*, and have thought but little about syntax except as suggested by inflectional endings, still we have got the meaning, not as readily perhaps, but in the same way, I take it, that the Roman boy must have got it, that is, in the Latin order of words and by adding one conception to another until the sense was complete. Let us read again and now translate our sentence as a whole: Cæsar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur, . . . tamen, ne aestatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum

<sup>1</sup> Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treviri.

bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarus ad secum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit.

7. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus <sup>happen</sup> acciderat, fore videbat, *Cæsar, although the same, which on the former days had happened, he saw would occur* (lit. *be*), or (in a more natural English order), *Cæsar, although he saw that the same thing, which had happened on the former days, would occur, —*

(Notice that the real meaning of **idem** is made clear by the **quod . . . acciderat**-clause, and that the relation of **idem** to what follows is seen when **fore videbat** is reached in the reading, it being presumed that the reader, having done his elementary work well, understands the relation of **idem . . . fore** to **videbat**.)

ut, si essent hostes pulsi, (*namely*) *that, if the enemy were routed*, (surely this reads *naturally* enough) **celeritate periculum effugerent**; — we see now what Cæsar saw would happen, if the enemy were put to flight, viz. : that *they would by their swiftness escape danger*. We can hardly avoid translating this as a *result* clause, but why think of it as result or anything else, provided we see what the author means? We read further in our sentence —

**tamen nactus**<sup>1</sup> **equites circiter triginta**, — To whom does the form (watch closely inflectional endings!) of **nactus** show that it refers? We have then : *nevertheless securing about thirty horsemen*,

**quos Commius Atrebas secum transportaverat**, — <sup>bring</sup> There ought to be no attempt to refer **secum** to **Caesar** (cf. **sibi** p. 19).

Knowing that the word refers to **Commius**, the

<sup>1</sup> **nanciscor**, **i**, **nactus sum**, *get, secure*.

meaning should be easily seen : *whom Commius the Atrebatian had brought with him*, —

legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Now we have what Caesar did : <sup>draw up</sup> *draw up the legions in battle array before the camp*. Here we have one of "those very involved Latin sentences" in which one subordinate clause (*etsi idem*) is temporarily suspended by another subordinate clause (*quod . . . . acciderat*), a sentence in which we do not find out what Caesar did till the very end. Yet, without magnifying the point of difficulty, or seeking by needless analysis to make hard a thing reasonably easy, we have managed to see its meaning very much as we do in a long English sentence, and as the Roman must have done. Caesar, *etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit*. Translate it.

8. Itaque, vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, — *Accordingly the merchants being summoned from all sides to himself*, —

neque <sup>how great</sup> *quanta* esset insulae magnitudo, *neither how great was the size of the island*, — Easy enough, if we know the meaning of *quanta*, without asking why *esset* is subjunctive, although the interrogative notion implied in *quanta* along with the mode of the verb, should be sufficient to suggest an indirect question.

neque quae aut <sup>inhabit</sup> *quantae nationes incolerent*, — We would here look for a clause coördinate with the preceding one (*neque A. and G. 155, 1, a ; G. 475, 482 ;*

## INTRODUCTION.

H. 554, I., 2): *nor what or how great peoples inhabited [the island], neque quem <sup>practice (or skill)</sup> usum belli haberent, nor what practice of war they had, i.e., what was their system of warfare, (or skill in fighting),—*

*aut quibus <sup>custom</sup> institutis uterentur, — however indefinite quibus institutis might at first sight appear to be, the very next word removes the uncertainty: or what customs they used (had),—*

*neque qui (made definite by what follows) essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, nor what were for the great number of larger vessels fit harbors, —*

*reperire poterat: was he able to find out.* Re-read this sentence rapidly to see how easily the sense may be had in the Latin order. *Itaque, vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.* Not until the end of the sentence do we see the full, or peculiar, force of the ablative absolute *vocatis . . . mercatoribus: although he called, etc.* Remember that a translation into idiomatic English requires that regard be paid to the order of words demanded by the English.

9. Take one other example, this time from Cicero, not forgetting to seek Cicero's meaning in the order in which he speaks:<sup>1</sup> *Et quoniam in hoc <sup>discharge of duty</sup> officio and since in this discharge of duty, <sup>zeal</sup> studium*

<sup>1</sup> The English words will be given, for the sake of illustration, as nearly as possible in the Latin order.

meae defensionis ab accusatoribus, *the zeal of my defense by the accusers*, atque etiam ipsa susceptio causae reprehensa est, *and even the very undertaking [on Cicero's part] of the case has been blamed*, antequam pro Lucio Murena dicere instituo, *before in behalf of Lucius Murena to speak I begin*, pro me ipso pauca dicam: *on my own behalf a few words (briefly) will I speak*. Now, this inverted English is not elegant or such as should be used in an idiomatic translation, but it is clear. It can be understood easily enough in its inverted order and in the same way can the Latin be understood.

NOTE. — It is suggested that the selections at the end of the book be again drawn on for some sentences for class practice. Sentences not too difficult should be selected. The suggestion made by Professor W. G. Hale <sup>1</sup> is a good one, viz.: that the words of the sentence be written on the blackboard by the teacher. This may be accompanied by such help and questioning as may seem best. In any event it has the merit of *compelling* attention to each word *only as it appears*, and encourages the thing aimed at.

In the examples above given, the object has not been so much to afford practice in reading as to show that to take in the thought in the order of the Latin words is no impossible thing, but is on the other hand reasonably easy; to show to what extent even separate words and phrases will suggest meaning, though the words immediately following, which in ordinary reading would be helpful as soon as seen, were for the moment not seen.

While there is a gain in allowing the eye to run along the line of the text so as to take in phrases as a whole and to associate together quickly the words whose relation is shown by inflectional terminations, still, *until the habit of "thinking in*

<sup>1</sup> In a pamphlet on the "Art of Reading Latin," Boston, 1887.

*the Latin* "be established, some check seems desirable. For those who have patience to use it, the device suggested by Professor Hale in the pamphlet above mentioned will be found serviceable, viz.: to use in reading a piece of card or stiff paper, so notched as to enable the reader to see only a word or two ahead, but all of the preceding portion of the sentence.

It is assumed that the Latin words in their peculiar order should give a meaning to us of the nineteenth century as clearly and naturally, if not as easily, as to the Roman of the first. Not that the meaning of *every* word will be clearly seen at the first reading, — *that* cannot always be said of

English, — but the general sense should be clear. When a point of difficulty is reached, it is generally better to re-read (perhaps from the last full stop as marked by the punctuation), rather than to read forward for enlightenment. On the other hand, sometimes the *full meaning* cannot be had until the end of the sentence is reached, as in the case of the "period," where a portion of the main clause is apt to be held back until the very end. But in most cases, when ignorance of a conception blocks further progress, it should be overcome in some way, either by help rendered directly by teacher (in class-exercises), or by dictionary, or by re-reading. Reading ahead of a difficulty should not in sight reading ordinarily extend further than the next full stop. The clauses should be comprehended as they are finished, the reader remembering that any partial expression of the main clause (*which is apt to begin* the "period") must be kept

in mind for completion of the idea at the end. This is especially necessary when an English translation is to be made, which necessitates not simply the comprehension of the meaning but a proper arrangement of English clauses. In *rapid* read-

When in  
difficulty — what?

English  
translation.

ing, to get the sense of clauses as they are finished is not hard to do. The Roman did it in discourse both heard and read ; so must we. Let us read one or two sentences somewhat more difficult than those just given :

Examples. 1. (From Livy's account of the war with the Volsci.)

**Volsci** (appropriately standing *first*, for what name is more striking or important than the name of the foe?)

**exiguam spem in armis, alia undique <sup>cut off</sup> abscisa, cum <sup>try</sup> temptassent,**<sup>1</sup> — Here *alia . . . abscisa* would be hard but for what precedes and but for the gender of *alia* (its case, and so the gender, being indicated by *abscisa*), which points to *spem*, the sense being *when the Volsci, cut off from every hope* (lit. *other hope from all quarters being cut off*), *had tried (what) small hope (there was) in arms*, —

**praeter cetera adversa loco quoque iniquo ad pugnam <sup>meet in battle</sup> congressi,** — *praeter cetera adversa* should be taken in as a phrase : *besides other disadvantages, they had joined in battle in a spot unfavorable for a fight*. **Congressi** should be at once referred to the **Volsci** — to none other could it refer — and, having done that, the sense is clear, even though it be not clear whether **congressi** is an agreeing participle or a verb (with **sunt** understood).

**iniquiore ad fugam,** — balancing **iniquo ad pugnam**. The relation of **iniquo** to **loco** having been seen,

<sup>1</sup> If we seek merely *what Livy's meaning is*, why query now whether **Volsci** is the subject of **temptassent** or of a main verb to come later on? *As no new subject is introduced*, **temptassent** must refer to **Volsci** as subject, or to a supplied subject (like *illi*) referring to **Volsci**, and either way gives us what we wish — the meaning.



**iniquiore** is no stumbling-block, and in sense is :  
*(in a place) worse adapted for escape, —*

**cum ab omni parte caederentur**, — <sup>on every side</sup> The verb must refer to  
 (if it do not agree with) the only subject mentioned,  
 viz., the **Volsci**. Hence, *since they were cut to*  
*pieces on every hand, —*

**ad preces a certamine versi**, (cf. remark made above as to  
**congressi**) *turning from fighting to begging, i.e.,*  
*ceasing to fight and asking for quarter.*

<sup>give up</sup> **dedito** <sup>hand over</sup> **imperatore traditisque armis**, (explains itself) *their*  
*general being given up and their arms handed over, —*

**sub iugum missi**, This idiom is too common to occasion  
 trouble; as to **missi** cf. remark as to **congressi**  
 above. *Trans. sent under the yoke.*

**cum singulis vestimentis ignominiae cladisque pleni dimit-  
 tuntur**. Now we have it! *They — the Volsci —*  
*with but a garment apiece are sent away (home)*  
*disgraced and defeated, lit. full of disgrace and defeat.*  
 (A. and G. 218, a; G. 373; H. 399, I., 3.)

Now and not till now do we see that syntactically  
**congressi**, **versi** and **missi** are not finite  
 The Period. verbs but participles, and that the last  
 word in the "period" is the main verb.

Without thinking of any idiomatic English translation we  
 have got the sense of this long sentence very much as the  
 Roman reader must have done. Let us re-read it rapidly,  
 trying to see it as a whole "period." **Volsci exiguum spem**  
**in armis, alia undique abscisa, cum temptassent, praeter**  
**cetera adversa loco quoque iniquo ad pugnam congressi,**  
**iniquiore ad fugam, cum ab omni parte caederentur,**  
**ad preces a certamine versi, dedito imperatore traditisque**  
**armis, sub iugum missi cum singulis vestimentis igno-**  
**miniae cladisque pleni dimittuntur.** If we are to translate

it into idiomatic English — a very different process from seeing merely what the writer means — we must render it as far as possible by short coördinate sentences, each one of which shall be complete in itself, whereas in Latin all that is embraced in the “period” is looked at *as a whole*,<sup>1</sup> the main idea (in the last example above-given, *the return home of the disgraced Volsci*) being kept back until the subordinate clauses (describing the despair of the Volsci, the details of defeat and surrender) are expressed. But a recognition of all this, interesting and helpful enough in its way, is unnecessary to see the meaning, which is what we want. On the other hand, an English translation will run somewhat thus :<sup>2</sup> *The Volsci as a forlorn hope had staked all on an appeal to arms — other hope they had none. In addition to other disadvantages was added the fact that they had met their enemy on ground unfavorable for a battle and still worse for making good a retreat (if necessary), but cut down on every side they cease to fight and cry for quarter. Surrendering their general and handing over their arms, they are made to pass under the yoke and, disgraced and ruined, are sent home with but a garment apiece.*

2. Take another example of the “period” — also from Livy. Here, as in the former case, the sentence opens with a main word (**Flaminius**, the name of the consul whose action has excited such bitter resentment and criticism), the sentence immediately preceding our own telling us that Hannibal, in order to goad on Flaminius, adopted a policy of laying waste the country round about.

**Flaminius, qui ne quieto quidem hoste ipse quieturus erat,**  
*Flaminius, who would not himself have remained quiet,*  
*though the enemy had been so, tum vero, postquam res*

<sup>1</sup> A. and G. p. 392, Note on structure; G. 685; H. 573.

<sup>2</sup> This rendering is purposely made very free — almost paraphrastic.

**sociorum ante oculos prope suos** *then when* (something we have regarding) *the country* (or *property*) *of the allies* (the syntactical relation of **res sociorum** we cannot yet see : the meaning we can) *almost before his own eyes* <sup>plunder and ravage</sup> **ferri agique vidit**, (*to be*) *plundered and ravaged he sees* (for **vidit** must refer to **Flaminius**, as no other logical subject has been introduced), **suum** (i.e., **Flaminius**) <sup>disgrace</sup> **id dedecus** <sup>think</sup> **ratus**, *thinking* (for the reader seeing in **ratus** a form of **reor** must refer it to **Flaminius**, and the peculiar usage in Latin after a verb of thinking should explain **suum id dedecus**) *that (to be) his own disgrace*, **per mediam iam Italian** <sup>move about</sup> **vagari Poenum** (evidently explanatory of **id**) *that the Carthaginian was moving about, through the very midst of Italy*, **atque** (a like construction will follow **atque** <sup>1</sup>) <sup>resist</sup> **obsistente nullo ad ipsa Romana moenia ire oppugnanda**, (the relation of **ire** as well as **vagari** should be easy for one who understands **ratus**, and he who has learned to distinguish between **gerund** and **gerundive** should see in **oppugnanda** no difficulty) *and that, no man hindering, to the very walls of Rome was he marching to storm them* (lit. *to the very Roman walls to be stormed*), **ceteris omnibus in consilio** <sup>showy</sup> **salutaria magis quam speciosa suadentibus**, *all the others* (except **Flaminius** himself) *in the war-council advocating things conducive to safety rather than (things) showy*

<sup>1</sup> The force of coördinate conjunctions is the same in Latin as in English and should be observed carefully in reading, especially **et**, **atque**, — **que** and the correlatives **et . . . et**.

<sup>2</sup> **consilio** = **concilio** (*war-council*).

(i.e., a safe rather than a more offensive policy). The meaning of **suadentibus** suggests what sort of a sentence to follow? **collegam expectandum**, (*namely*) *that his colleague should be waited-for*, **ut**—the time of **expectandum** (future) gives us the meaning of **ut** beyond peradventure, *in order that* **coniunctis exercitibus, communi animo consilioque**, *with* (there ought to be little danger of an attempt to read these words as dative, for the context demands the ablative) *united armies, with a common spirit and plan* (we can almost guess what the context requires here : evidently some word expressive of action, like **pugnare**), <sup>struggle</sup> **rem gererent**, *they might carry on the struggle*, **interea exercitu auxillisque levium armorum ab** (read on to see what follows **ab**—of itself indefinite ; up to **ab** the meaning is clear enough) <sup>unrestrained</sup> **effusa praedandi<sup>1</sup> licentia**, *in the meantime with the army and allies of the light arms* (i.e., light-armed men) evidently something was to be *done* and, as the context shows, something to put a check upon the unlimited plundering. What? **hostem cohibendum**, — If the **collegam expectandum** above was understood, these words should not be mysterious, closely connected as the two phrases are. (*Advising*) *that the enemy be prevented from their unrestrained license of plundering*, — **iratus** — a glance at the form of this word ought suffice to refer it to the subject, — *Flaminius enraged*, **se** (indefinite as to relation, but clearly referring to **Flaminius**) **ex consilio** — remembering the meaning of **consilio** above (= **concilio**), the notion *Flaminius himself from the*

<sup>1</sup> **praedari**, *to plunder*.

*council of war* should help us to guess the following idea, if the next word did not at once reveal it :  
**proripuit**, *hurried himself*, i.e., *rushed from the council*.

What was said relative to the last period might be repeated here. We see the same peculiarities : subject (**Flaminius**) at the beginning of the sentence, the main verb (**proripuit**) at the end, the subordinate clauses logically connected together, but falling in between the subject and main verb. Here no more than in the last sentence, while seeking *in Livy's order*, so far as possible, to see *what Livy meant*, have we sought to make an idiomatic English translation. That translation will not, as in Latin, be a single sentence, but will consist of a series of coördinate expressions. Thus :—

Flaminius, qui ne quieto quidem hoste ipse quieturus erat, tum vero, postquam res sociorum ante oculos prope suos ferri agique vidit, suum id dedecus ratus, per mediam iam Italiam vagari Poenum atque obsistente nullo ad ipsa Romana moenia ire oppugnanda, ceteris omnibus in consilio salutaria magis quam speciosa suadentibus, collegam exspectandum, ut coniunctis exercitibus, communi animo consilioque rem gererent, interim equitatu auxiliisque levium armorum ab effusa praedandi licentia hostem cohibendum, iratus se ex consilio proripuit.

*Flaminius would not have remained inactive even though the enemy had kept quiet. But, when he saw that the possessions of the allies were ravaged and plundered almost under his eyes, that Hannibal was now marching whither-soever he pleased, through the very midst of Italy and without opposition was on his way to storm Rome itself, he felt the disgrace as though it were personal. All in the council of war, except himself, advised a course such as should ensure safety rather than mere display. They urged that he should*

*await the arrival of his colleague, so that with united forces and a common courage and plan of campaign they might continue the struggle, and that for the time being with the cavalry and light-armed troops they should check the enemy in his unrestrained plunder. At this Flaminius, beside himself with rage, rushed from the council.*

II. Next to the Latin order and syntax, a strange vocabulary constitutes the greatest impediment to rapid and satisfactory reading. Too often the pupil, when commencing his first Latin text, has but a very limited stock of words, and, though by oft-repeated and unceasing reference to the dictionary he may acquire such vocabulary as to suffice for his first-read text, as soon as he opens a new author, he finds that his work, if not for the most part to be done over, must be continued in the same trying and discouraging way. He seems enslaved to grammar and lexicon without hope of release. Now, anything that can free him and make the acquirement of a vocabulary an agreeable, or reasonably easy task, is very desirable. It is hoped that the following suggestions, if followed, may be found helpful to that end.

The meanings  
of words.

The learner should from the start learn the lesson taught in the earlier pages, that the *translation* of a Latin sentence into *idiomatic English* is a very different thing from such a comprehension of the Latin words as enables the reader to get the idea or *meaning* of the Latin, and in sight-reading he should seek to find out this meaning without making any conscious effort at an English translation; that the meanings of individual words are not to be sought out and in puzzle fashion put together "so as to make sense," as many a boy actually tries to do, but that the sense, as in the exercises before-given, is to be got in the order of the Latin words,

Translation vs.  
thinking in Latin.

idea being added to idea until the meaning as a whole is seen. Neither need he finger a lexicon for every new word<sup>1</sup> nor, again, ought he to rely upon any *one* source of help in inferring meanings. But, in order to be

**Sources of help.** serviceable, the means of help must be fairly used. That is, the reader should keep them in mind when reading, and should try to apply such of them as will enable him to infer meanings in each instance. Some one of them will be found of use in the case of very many, if not most, strange words.

**The meaning of a word.** In what does the meaning of a word consist? Where do we look for it? By what elements is it determined? By the

1. *Root.* (A. and G. 157 ; G. 24, 2 ; H. 314.)
2. *Stem Signification*, or "significant endings" (suffixes) as seen in the formation of the word. (A. and G. 159 ; H. 317, 318.)
3. *Inflectional Endings.* (A. and G. 20 ; G. 16 ; H. 46.)
4. *The force of the components* (including prefixes) making compound words.

Of these various elements we shall speak in turn.<sup>2</sup>

In seeking the meaning of a word having more than one meaning, the main idea or root-meaning should be *first* looked for, i.e., thought of, if known, and from this a more specific meaning must be inferred in accordance with the requirements of the context or general sense of the passage. This is especially necessary in the case of verbs. A word is

<sup>1</sup> "Judicious guessing" is not only fair but sometimes wise. In English we often resort to it as a temporary expedient. But it should never (in Latin) take the place of *after*-consultation of the dictionary.

<sup>2</sup> Of course, the value of context in determining meaning must be constantly recognized.

not apt to have more than one or two fundamental meanings.

Take for example the English word **run**.

**The English RUN.** Its fundamental idea seems to be that of lateral motion. Yet we speak of "a good *run*" and "a *run* of fifty miles" e.g., of a railway train, of a play as "having a good *run*," of Bull *Run* (a stream), of "a *run* on a bank," of "a *run* for fowls" (a range of ground for exercise), "a *run* in music," of "the *run* of mankind," etc. Now the primary meaning suggested

by the word **run** underlies and easily explains these various, but at first sight so very diverse, expressions. So we speak of

"race-*course*," a "*course*-at-dinner," a "*course* of brick," a "ship's *course*,"—all suggesting motion as in the Latin **cursus**, from which our English **course** indirectly (through the old French) comes to us. Or, take the

**The Latin PENDERE.** Latin word **pendere**. From the primary notion *to suspend*, or *cause to hang down*, we

get meanings apparently very dissimilar in every way, but which are seen upon a little reflection to be but modifications of the fundamental idea. Such are *to weigh*, *to pay* (**pecuniam pendere**: because in the earliest times payment was made by weighing out metals); *to esteem* or *value* (cf. **non flocci pendere**, *to value at not a rush's worth*); *to ponder* (*weigh mentally*; cf. Eng. "weigh one's words"); *to suffer*, *pay the penalty* (**pendere poenas**: because in early times punishments were apt to consist of fines paid in money).<sup>1</sup> It will be seen that these meanings have a natural relation to the root idea and spring legitimately from it.

It too frequently happens that the reader, who chances to know, perhaps, only one meaning of a word having several meanings, seeks to apply—not tentatively, but blindly and

<sup>1</sup> It would be well to draw on the lexicon for additional words like **agere**, **mittere**, etc., to be used by way of further illustration.



stubbornly — his one meaning, which will not suit the case.<sup>1</sup> Much difficulty results from this habit of thinking only of the meaning that the student has chanced to pick up, likely in elementary study, and as likely to be *not* the root idea, as otherwise. In all cases of doubt think,

**The Root meaning.** if possible, of this root or fundamental meaning *at first*: from it and the context seek to infer the specific meaning needed for the case in question. By way of additional illustration take **eruptio** in the phrase **omnibus portis** (of a town) **eruptione facta** (ablative absolute). The reader, to whom the word is new, thinks, perhaps, of our English word *eruption*, which is misleading, and, consequently, fails to see any meaning agreeable to the context. But, if he know and think of the fundamental meaning of **erumpere**, *break forth*, or of the root **rup**, *break*, with the least imagination he can scarcely fail to see the meaning of *a breaking forth from the gates*. So, **signa convertere** is not to **CONVERT** the standards, but to *turn* them, i.e., *to face about*. **Hostibus adversis occurrere** is not to **OCCUR** to an adverse enemy, but to *run against* (**ob + currere**) *an enemy turned towards* (**ad + vertere**) the opposite party — that is, **hostibus adversis occurrere** = *to meet the enemy in front, or face to face*. **Insolentia** is not primarily **INSOLENCE**, but *unusualness, novelty* (**in + soleo, in + solens**).

Hence, the pupil should learn new roots as he meets with them,<sup>2</sup> and, as he reads at sight, let him think *first* of the

<sup>1</sup> A blunder almost as bad is where, knowing two meanings of a word, the reader ignores the very one required by the context. He forgets, for example, that the two meanings of **velle**, *to wish* or *desire*, and *to be willing* are not ordinarily interchangeable, and wonders why he misses the sense of a passage, in which he tries perseveringly, but vainly, to make the verb mean *wish*, when *be willing* would be perfectly clear. Cf. *do* and *make* (**facere**).

<sup>2</sup> Some teachers may prefer to make out a list of the more common roots and have them memorized.

root meaning of new words, referring compound verbs to their primitives. For example, let **per-ficio** suggest **facio**, **obsideo sedeo**, etc. In order to be able to refer a derived or

compound form to the primitive elements,

**Phonetic changes.** some knowledge of phonetic changes is necessary, at least that in many verbs

a in a primitive becomes in the derivative e or i (thus, **gradior**, but **in-gredior**; **facio**, but **per-ficio**), that ae becomes i (**caedo**, **oc-cido**), that e becomes i (**sedeo**, **ob-sidio**), au becomes ō or ū (**claudio**, **in-clūdo**), etc. The euphonic changes undergone by the preposition, when a component of a compound word, should also be understood. See A. and G. 11, f, 3, N.; H. 344, 5, 6.

A second valuable means of inferring the meanings of many new words is to be found in the

**Suffixes of words.** suffixes of derivative words — the so-called “significant endings.” With such derivative

endings we are familiar even in English. In the words *sensual-ist*, *sing-er*, *heir-ess* and *music-ian* we have the endings **-ist**, **-er**, **-ess** (feminine) and **-ian**, denoting *one who*, or *an agent*. The adjective endings, **-ful** (= *abundance*), **-en** (= *material*), **-ous** (= *full of*), and **-ic** (= *pertaining to, characteristic*) we see in *fear-ful*, *silk-en*, *danger-ous*, and *poet-ic*. Just so in Latin are many endings by which a reader is enabled to infer the meaning of the word in question, provided he know the primitive word or even the meaning of some word closely related to it. E.g., if the learner knows that the primitive meaning of **agere** is *to put in motion, to move*, and also knows the signification of the suffixes **-tor** (*person, agent*), **-men** (*means, result of an action, or the act itself*), **-ilis** (adjective = *derived from, belonging to*), **-tio** (*the action of a verb*), **-ito** (frequentative verb denoting *repeated, intense, or continued action*), he can easily infer that **ac-tor** means an *actor, doer*; **ag-men**, a *motion or something*

English derivatives, *if used in the proper way*, may afford valuable aid in inferring meanings. That Help from English derivatives. is, the reader may sometimes refer the Latin word in dispute to some English word related to it. *But this must be done very carefully.* It should be kept in mind that the Latin word is not necessarily translatable — is not, indeed, in classical Latin apt to be translatable by the English word derived from it, even though the word in question be the same part of speech. Every person who has turned much English into Latin knows how vexatious this is. The explanation is found in the fact that many such English derivatives have come from Latin words after they had wholly, or in part, lost their earlier classical meaning, or from Latin words not found at all in classical Latin. In such a case the English word may be far from useless, provided we *let it suggest the original, or root-meaning*, leaving the specific or given meaning, whether the same as the English word (as is sometimes the case) or not, to be determined by the context.

In seeking to infer the meaning of new words through English derivatives, it will be found helpful The supine stem. in many cases, if the reader try to let the *supine* stem<sup>1</sup> (if known, or if it can be guessed by analogy) of the verb in question suggest some English derivative, which might give a hint as to the meaning. For example, the reader meets with some form of the present tense of **pingere**, where the context will not of itself suggest a meaning. If (after the analogy of **figere**) he can guess the supine **pictum**, it will, probably, suggest *picture* and so the sense. This will hold good of a large number of words. Hence, in the case of a new verb, where the context cannot, or does not, give a hint of the meaning, see if the *supine*

<sup>1</sup> Many English words, which the present stem of the Latin verb would never hint at, are derived from the *supine* stem.

stem will not through some English derivative give the desired help.

With a view to acquiring a working vocabulary as speedily as possible, a special effort should be made to fix the meanings of all new words *when they are first met with*. If the vocabulary of any new author is to be acquired economically, the work must be entered upon with earnestness and determination. The chief reason why the average pupil fails to get within a reasonable time a working vocabulary of a new author is too often *because he does not really try to do so*. It too frequently happens that the reader looks up new words with a view to an approaching recitation than with a thought of getting their meaning once for all, as an earnest learner would be apt to do in studying a modern language. Thus a word is generally looked up several times before the meaning is fixed, or any real effort made to remember it. We have emphasized elsewhere the necessity for a proper use of the lexicon, but the student should not be satisfied with the mere consultation of his lexicon, however good it may be: he must put forth systematic and earnest effort to remember the new vocabulary.<sup>1</sup>

As a help, not simply in understanding meanings, but in remembering them, the etymologies are of service in many instances. Even the mere reference of the derivative to a primitive word is generally helpful. Especially true is this in the

<sup>1</sup> For some persons a helpful plan is to use slips of paper (which for convenience may be dated), or a pocket blank-book in which may be made daily lists of the new words with their meanings. These lists should be thoroughly memorized and reviewed at regular intervals. At first the slips will appear to accumulate rapidly, but the "reviews" may be trusted to thin them out.

case of technical terms, and the etymologies of such words as are referable to roots. Root-words may be given out by the teacher in view of subsequent lessons.<sup>1</sup>

As a further help idioms and phrases should be learned in the same thorough way as the new words.

Idioms, phrases,  
etc. This is true not only of idioms met with in reading, but something more than this must be done. Idioms are generally untranslatable at sight and in many cases do not admit at all of so-called literal translation. They must be learned outright — sometimes with little or no possible explanation. Now, the learning of the idioms necessary for ordinary reading is not a formidable task, if a few can be memorized daily for a reasonable length of time.

Nor is this all. No small obstacle to rapid reading is the neglect to fix early the meanings of prepositions, conjunctions, and adverbs.

Meanings  
of prepositions,  
conjunctions, and  
adverbs. *Such words are necessary in most instances to the sense: they can ordinarily neither be omitted nor guessed.* Many of them are picked up in time, but the pupil who has finished his "First Lessons" generally knows only those most commonly met with in reading. An honest effort to learn outright such lists as are found in all the grammars, rather than to depend on his subsequent work in reading and writing, will, as a means of immediate

<sup>1</sup> Following the suggestion made by Prof. White in the series of letters referred to on p. 7, the writer has for some years been accustomed to give out to some classes a few words each day bearing upon the succeeding day's work, as a help and encouragement to read the lesson at sight. Sometimes the meanings have been given, sometimes the student has been told to look up the words in a lexicon with a view to reading the lexicon article throughout. Every such root or stem-meaning learned should enable the learner to infer the meaning of several other words. Thus, the getting of a working vocabulary of a given author is much abridged.

encouragement and help, be worth the necessary effort.<sup>1</sup> A. and G. 148-156; G. 417-419 and 476 *et seq.*; H. 303-311 and 432-437.

The context should be continually looked to for assistance in getting at the meaning. Frequently we have little else to guide us to the *specific* meaning of a word. Rarely, when a word-meaning cannot be readily seen—or even in the case of a whole subordinate clause—it is better to drop it mentally for the time, hoping that a re-reading of the paragraph, or chapter, or that other parts of the sentence will afford the exact help needed for the solution of the difficulty. This, however, should be done only as a last resort, for, as every sentence should be logically related to the one preceding it and should, therefore, throw light upon the next following, this contextual advantage should not be thrown away, as must be the case, should we pass on to the next sentence before at least the *general meaning* of the preceding clause is seen. This dependence for meaning of one sentence upon another is made the more prominent in sentences where the main finite verb has either no expressed subject, or some indefinite word as subject, for the real meaning of which we must refer to some noun in a preceding (generally the next preceding) sentence. Ordinarily, in a sentence where no new logical or grammatical subject is introduced, we look to the last-mentioned subject in a preceding sentence for the logical relation. Where the subject is not expressed, it is well to notice the number and person of the verb, and, if a participle is used to form the verb (e.g., *amatus est*), to mark the gender, in order to see the relation.

Notice that the subject of a so-called impersonal verb must be suggested by the verb itself in connection with

<sup>1</sup> Parts of the following grammar sections may be omitted at the discretion of the teacher.

the context. Thus, **mihi est pugnandum**, *I must fight* (lit. *it must be fought by me*); **pugnatum**

Impersonal verbs. **est**, *the battle raged* (lit. *it was fought*). Be-

ginners have to be reminded continually that most impersonal verbs do not merely express weather changes or operations of nature, like **pluit**, *it rains*, but are verbs which have a logical subject and that the *it* used in the English translation has generally no corresponding pronoun (*id*, *hoc*, *illud*) in the Latin sentence. Thus, in **ubi visum est**, *sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt* the subject of **visum est** is not a neuter pronoun but the infinitive **discedere** understood, i.e., supplied logically by **discedunt**. (A. and G. 270; G. 423; H. 538.)

## LATIN AT SIGHT.

### 1. *A Valuable Hen.*

Mulier quaedam habebat gallinam, quae cotidie ovum pariebat aureum. Hinc suspicari coepit illam auri massam intus celare, et gallinam occidit. Sed nihil in ea repperit, nisi quod in aliis gallinis reperiri solet. Itaque dum maioribus divitiis inhiat, etiam minores perdidit.

5

### 2. *The Story of Tarpeia.*

Titus Tatius, the king of the Sabini, is advancing on Rome. To succeed he must capture the arx on one summit of the Capitoline hill. Tarpeia was the daughter of the Roman commander of the arx.

Cum Romae appropinquarent, Tarpeiam virginem nacti, quae aquae hauriendae causa descenderat, ei T. Tatius optionem muneris dedit, si exercitum suum in Capitolium perduxisset. Illa petiit, quod illi in sinistris manibus gere-

1. gallina, *hen*. — ovum, *egg*.  
2. parere (-io), *to bring forth*,  
i.e., *lay*. — coepit: sc. illa (mulier).  
— massa, *lump, mass*.

4. nisi quod, *except what*: quod  
= id quod (cf. Eng. *what = that*  
*which*).

5. divitiae, -arum, *riches*: da-  
tive after inhiare, *to covet* (lit. *gape*  
*at*). — minores: sc. *what?*

6. appropinquarent: as subj.  
sc. Sabini. — nancisci, nactus, *to*  
*meet with*.

7. haurire, *to draw up*. Transl.  
*for the purpose of drawing water*.  
— descenderat, i.e., *from the*  
*citadel*.

8. optio, *choice*. — munus, -eris,  
*present*.

*Read to class*



bant, videlicet anulos et armillas. Quibus dolose repromissis, Sabinos in arcem perduxit, ubi Tatiis scutis eam obrui praecepit; nam et ea in laevis habuerant.

### 3. *Borrowed Clothing.*

Asinus pelle leonis indutus territabat homines et bestias, 5 tamquam leo esset. Sed forte, dum se celerius movet, aures eminebant; unde agnitus, in pistrinum abductus est, ubi poenas petulantiae dedit.

### 4. *The German Bison.*

Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura 10 tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parant. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt; hoc se labore durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus,

1. videlicet, *namely*. — anulus, *ring*. — armilla, *bracelet*. — dolose: infer meaning from suffix and dolus. — repromittere, *to promise in return (re-)*.

3. praecipere, *to order*. — et ea, *these also*. What?

4. induere, *to put on, clothe one's self*. Transl. *having dressed himself*.

5. tamquam, *as if*. — celerius: transl. by *too*. . . .

6. eminere, *to stick out*. — unde, *on which account*. — agnoscere, *to recognize*. — pistrinum, *mill*.

7. poenas dare, *to pay the penalty*. — petulantia, *impudence*.

8. eorum: Caesar is describing the animals of the Hercynian forest. — urus, *wild-ox, bison*.

9. paulo infra, *a little below*. — species, *-ei, appearance*.

11. parcere: gov. what c.?

12. studiose: suffix? Infer meaning from studium, *eagerness*. — fovea, *pitfall*.

13. venatio: infer from suffix and venari, *to hunt*. — qui: relative often comes before antecedent.

14. relatis, *i.e., from the hunt*. — in publicum: sc. locum, *i.e., for exhibition*.

quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

### 5. *Might makes Right.*

Societatem iunxerant leo, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praeda 5 autem, quam ceperant, in quattuor partes aequales divisa, leo, 'Prima,' ait, 'mea est; debetur enim haec praestantiae meae. Tollam et secundam, quam meretur robur meum. Tertiam vindicat sibi egregius labor meus. Quartam qui sibi arrogare voluerit, is sciat, se habiturum me inimicum 10 sibi.'

### 6. *A Home Thrust.*

Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a distinguished jurist; Ennius, "the parent of Roman literature," dramatist, epic writer, etc., was born B.C. 239.

Nasica cum ad poetam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse, Nasica

1. testimonio: dat., but transl. like nom.

3. conquirere (-quisivi, -quisitum), to search for. — ab labris (labrum), at the rim (of the larger end of the horn). — circumcludere, to surround.

4. epulae, -arum, feast. — utuntur: sc. his.

5. iuvenca, heifer. — capra, she-goat.

7. debetur, is due. — praestantia, excellence.

9. sibi: reflexive refers to what part of the sentence? — egregius,

remarkable. — qui: antecedent (is) follows.

10. sciat: hortatory subjunc. After a verb like this in meaning what construction do we look for?

12. cum: the "subordinate connective" is not always the first word in the clause, which it logically introduces. — ostium, doorway. — ei(que): dat. with quaerenti.

13. ancilla, maid-servant. — esse: sc. subj. acc. referring to Ennium.

sensit illam domini iussu dixisse et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius et eum a ianua quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, 'Quid? ego non cognosco,' inquit, 'vocem tuam?'

- 5 Hic Nasica: 'Homo es impudens. Ego cum te quaererem, ancillae tuae credidi te domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi?'

7. *Discretion the better part of Valor.*

Mures aliquando habuerunt consilium, quomodo a fele caverent. Multis aliis propositis, omnibus placuit, ut ei  
10 tintinnabulum adnecteretur: sic enim ipsos sonitu admonitos eam fugere posse. Sed cum iam inter mures quaereretur, qui feli tintinnabulum adnecteret, nemo repertus est. — Fabula docet, in suadendo plurimos esse audaces, sed in ipso periculo timidos.

8. *Sour Grapes.*

- 15 Fame coacta vulpes alta in vinea  
uvam appetebat summis saliens viribus;  
quam tangere ut non potuit, discedens ait,  
'Nondum matura est; nolo acerbam sumere.'

9. *The Ancient Germans.*

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam  
20 neque Druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque

1. intus, *within* (the house).  
3. ianua, *house-door*.  
8. mus, muris, *mouse*. — quomodo, *how*. — feles, *cat*.  
9. placuit: used impersonally.  
10. tintinnabulum, *bell*. — adnectere, *to fasten to*. — sonitus, *sound*.  
11. posse: depends on "verb of saying" supplied from context.

13. suadendo: gerund of suadere, *to give advice*.  
15. fames, *hunger*. — alta is abl.  
16. salire, *to spring*.  
17. ut, *as, or when*. Notice the mode of verb.  
19. consuetudo, *style of living*.  
20. Druides, -um, *Druid-priests*.

sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; ab parvulis labori ac durtiae student. Agriculturae non student maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quaque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

#### 10. *An Unfortunate Musician.*

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, 'Ne me,' inquit, 'interficite; nam inermis sum, neque quicquam habeo praeter hanc tubam.' At hostes, 'Propter hoc ipsum,' inquit, 'te interimemus, quod, cum ipse pugnandi sis imperitus, alios ad pugnam incitare soles.'

#### 11. *Poor Pay.*

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercede igitur conduit gruem, qui illud extrahat. Hoc grus longitudine colli facile

1. studēre, *to care for.*—ducere, *to consider.*

2. opes, -um, *power.*

4. res militaris, *military science, warfare.*

5. ab parvulis = a pueris.

6. victus, -us, *sustenance, victuals.*—caseus, *cheese.*—caro, -nis, *flesh-meat.*

7. latrocinium, *robbery, brigandage.*

9. desidia, *sloth.*

10. violare, *to injure.*

11. prohibēre, *to protect.*

12. communicare, *to share with.*

13. tubicen, -inis, *trumpeter.*

14. inermis, -e, *without weapons.*

15. interimere, *to kill.*

16. quod, *because.*—imperitus, *unskilled in (with gen.).*

18. fauces, -um, *throat.*—os, ossis, *bone.*—inhaerēre, *to stick.*—merces, -edis, *pay.*—conducere, *to hire.*

19. grus, gruīs, *crane.*—colum, *neck.*

effecit. Cum autem mercedem postularet, subridens lupus et dentibus infrendens, 'Num tibi,' inquit, 'parva merces videtur, quod caput incolume ex lupi faucibus extraxisti?'

12. "*United we stand, divided we fall.*"

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi appropinquare sentiret, 5 filios convocavit, quos, ut fieri solet, interdum discordare noverat, et fascem virgularum afferri iubet. Quibus allatis, filios hortabatur, ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere non possent, distribuit singulis singulas virgas, iisque celeriter fractis, docuit illos, quam firma res esset 10 concordia quamque imbecillis discordia.

13. *A Noble Enemy.*

Legati ad Pyrrhum de redimendis captivis missi ab eo honorifice suscepti sunt: captivos sine pretio Romam misit. Unum ex legatis Romanorum, Fabricium, sic admiratus est, ut, cum eum pauperem esse cognovisset, quarta parte regni 15 promissa sollicitare voluerit, ut ad se transiret; contemptusque a Fabricio est. Interiecto anno contra Pyrrhum

2. *infrendere* (-eo), *to gnash.*

3. What meaning has *videre* in the passive voice besides *to be seen*?

4. What construction do we look for dependent on a verb of 'perceiving,' 'knowing,' 'thinking,' etc., and by what Engl. particle is the translation *to be* introduced?

5. *discordare*, *to disagree.*

6. *fascis*, *bundle.* — *virgula*, (dimin. of *virga*), *small branch, twig.*

7. How is a word, relative in

*form* (quod), *to be translated*, when a subordinate connective (*cum*) immediately follows it?

10. *imbecillis*, *weak.*

11. *Pyrrhus*, King of Epirus, assisted the people of Tarentum in the war against Rome, B.C. 280-272. — *redimere*, *to ransom* (lit. *to buy back*).

12. *suscipere*, *to receive.*

15. *sollicitare*, *to bribe.*

16. The enclitic is almost = *sed.* — *interiecto anno*, *after a year's interval.* Literally what?

Fabricius est missus. Tum, cum vicina castra ipse et rex haberent, medicus Pyrrhi ad eum nocte venit, promittens se veneno Pyrrhum occisurum, si sibi aliquid polliceretur. Quem Fabricius vinctum reduci iussit ad dominum, Pyrrhoque dici, quae contra caput eius medicus spondidisset. Tum rex admiratus eum dixisse fertur: 'Ille est Fabricius, qui difficilior ab honestate quam sol a cursu suo averti potest.'

#### 14. *Ambition that overleaped Itself.*

In prato quondam rana conspexit bovem, et tacta invidia tantae magnitudinis rugosam inflavit pellem: tum natos suos interrogavit, an bove esset latior. Illi negarunt. Rursus intendit cutem maiore nisu et simili quaesivit modo, quis maior esset. Illi dixerunt bovem. Novissime indignata, dum vult validius inflare sese, rupto iacuit corpore.

#### 15. *Too much High Living.*

Mulier vidua gallinam habebat, quae cotidie unum ovum pariebat. Illa existimabat, si gallinam diligentius saginaret, fore, ut illa bina aut terna ova cotidie pareret. Cum autem cibo superfluo gallina pinguis esset facta, plane ova parere desiit.

2. medicus, *physician.*

3. venenum, *poison.*

5. dici: the quae . . . spondidisset clause is subject. — caput = vitam. — spondere (-eo, with redupl. perf. spondidi), to promise.

8. rana, *frog.* — invidia is abl.

9. rugosam: infer meaning from ruga, a wrinkle. — inflare, to puff out. — natos = liberos.

11. intendere: literal meaning

(NOT intend) is what? — cutis, skin. — nisus, effort.

12. novissime, at last. — indignari, to think unworthy (of one's self), to be indignant.

13. rumpere (rupi, ruptum), to burst. — iacere (-eo), not iacere (-io).

14. viduus, *widowed.*

15. saginare, to fatten.

16. fore = futurum esse.

18. desinere (-sino, -sii or -sivi), to cease.

16. *Spartan Courage.*

Pari animo Lacedaemonii in Thermopylis occiderunt. Quid ille dux Leonidas dicit? 'Prandete animo forti, Lacedaemonii: hodie apud inferos fortasse cenabimus.' — Fuit haec gens fortis, dum Lycurgi leges vigeant. E quibus  
 5 unus, cum Perses hostis in colloquio dixisset glorians, 'Solem prae iaculorum multitudine et sagittarum non videbitis,'  
 'In umbra igitur,' inquit, 'pugnabimus.' Viros commemoro: qualis tandem Lacaena? quae cum filium in proelium misisset et interfectum audisset, 'Idcirco,' inquit, 'genueram,  
 10 ut esset qui pro patria mortem non dubitaret occumbere.'

17. *Circumstances alter Cases.*

Haedus stans in tecto domus lupo praetereunti maledixit. Cui lupo, 'Non tu,' inquit, 'sed tectum mihi maledixit.' Saepe locus et tempus timidos homines audaces reddit.

18. *Nature has divided her Gifts.*

Pavo coram grue pennas suas explicans, 'Quanta est,'  
 15 inquit, 'formositas mea et tua deformitas!' At grus evolans, 'Et quanta est,' inquit, 'levitas mea et tua tarditas!' —

1. animus, *courage*. — Thermopylae, -arum. — occidere, *to die* (not occidere, *to strike down, kill*).

2. prandere, *to breakfast*.

3. apud inferos, *in the lower world* (lit. *with the dwellers below*). — cenare, *to dine*.

4. Lycurgus, the famous Spartan law-giver. — vigere, *to be in esteem*.

6. prae, *because of* (with abl.).

7. umbra, *shade*. — viros: in contrast (antithesis) to Lacaena in the next line.

8. qualis, -e, *of what kind or nature*. — Lacaena, *Spartan woman*.

9. interfectum: sc. esse. — gignere (genui), *to bring into the world*.

10. mortem (or morti) occumbere, *to die*. — dubitare with the complementary inf. means what?

11. haedus, *kid*. — praeteriens, -euntis (*praeterire*).

14. pavo, -onis, *peacock*. — explicare, *to display* (lit. *to unfold*).

15. formositas, -atis, *natural beauty*.

Monet haec fabula, ne ob aliquod bonum, quod nobis natura tribuit, alios contemnamus, quibus natura alia et fortasse maiora dedit.

19. *Learning by Observation.*

Vulpes, asinus et leo venatum iverant. Ampla praeda facta, leo asinum illam partiri iubet. Qui cum singulis 5 singulas partes poneret aequales, leo eum correptum dilaniavit, et vulpeculae partiendi negotium tribuit. Illa astutior leoni partem maximam apposuit, sibi vix minimam reservans particulam. Tum leo subridens eius prudentiam laudare, et unde hoc didicerit, interrogare coepit. Et vulpes, 10 'Huius me,' inquit, 'calamitas docuit, quid minores potentioribus debeant.'

20. *How M. Valerius got the Name 'Corvus.'*

Ex Romanis tirones lecti sunt, factaeque legiones decem. Quae cum profectae essent adversus Gallos duce L. Furio, quidam ex Gallis unum ex Romanis, qui esset optimus, 15 provocavit. Tum se M. Valerius tribunus militum obtulit, et cum processisset armatus, corvus ei supra dextrum brachium sedet. Mox commissa adversus Gallum pugna, idem corvus alis et unguibus Galli oculos verberavit, ne rectum posset adspicere. Ita a tribuno Valerio interfectus 20 non solum victoriam ei, sed etiam nomen dedit. Nam postea idem 'Corvus' est dictus.

2. tribuere, to give.

4. asinus, ass. — venatum: former supine of venari. — praeda, prey.

5. partiri, to divide.

7. dilaniare, to tear in pieces. — vulpecula: force of the suffix? Infer meaning.

10. discere (didici), to learn.

13. tiro, recruit.

16. provocare, to challenge (lit. to call forth).

17. corvus, raven.

18. brachium, fore-arm.

19. unguis, claw. — verberare, to strike.



21. *Be content with thy Lot.*

Asinus equum beatum praedicabat, qui tam copiose pasceret, cum sibi post molestissimos labores ne paleae quidem satis praeberetur. Forte autem bello exorto equus in proelium agitur, et circumventus ab hostibus, post 5 incredibiles labores tandem multis vulneribus confossus collabitur. Haec omnia asinus conspicatus, 'O me stolidum,' inquit, 'qui beatitudinem ex praesentis temporis fortuna aestimaverim.'

22. *An Old Man's Interview with Death.*

Senex in silva ligna ceciderat, iisque sublatis domum 10 redire coepit. Cum aliquantum viae progressus esset, et onere et via defatigatus fascem deposuit, et secum aetatis et inopiae mala contemplatus, Mortem clara voce invocavit, quae ipsum ab omnibus his malis liberet. Tum Mors senis precibus auditis subito adstitit, et, quid vellet, percunctatur. 15 At senex, quem iam votorum suorum paenitebat, 'Nihil,'

2. palea, *chaff, straw*. — ne . . . quidem include what?

3. exorto from exoriri. What hint has been given as to inferring meaning of verbs compounded with prepositions?

4. circumventus: transl. literally, rather than by *circumvent*, which is figurative.

5. confodere (-io), -fodi, -fossus, *to pierce through*.

6. collabi (-labor), *to fall down*. — conspicari, *to observe*. — O me: what case is used in exclamations? — stolidus, *stupid*.

7. beatitudo: suffix? Infer meaning. — praesens, -entis.

8. aestimare: infer meaning from English.

9. lignum, *wood*; pl., *sticks, firewood*. — Distinguish between caedere and cadere. — tollere, sustuli, sublatum.

10. aliquantum viae, *some of the way* = acc. of "extent of space."

11. secum . . . contemplatus (contemplari), *reflecting upon*.

12. quae (why fem.)? . . . liberet: transl. by infin. (purpose).

14. subito, *suddenly*. — percunctari, *to ask*.

15. votum, *wish*. — nihil: sc. volo.

inquit, 'sed requiro, qui onus paululum allevet, dum ego rursus subeo.'

### 23. *Overjoyed!*

In B.C. 216 at Cannae (-arum), in southern Italy, the Romans suffered a great defeat at the hands of Hannibal.

In nostris annalibus scriptum legimus, qua tempestate apud Cannas exercitus populi Romani caesus est, anum matrem, nuntio de morte filii adlato, luctu atque maerore 5 adfectam esse. Sed is nuntius non verus fuit, atque is adulescens non diu post ex ea pugna rediit; anus, repente filio viso, copia inopinati gaudii oppressa exanimataque est.

### 24. *The Dog in the Manger.*

Canis iacebat in praesaepi bovesque latrando a pabulo arcebat. Cui unus boum 'Quanta ista,' inquit, 'invidia 10 est, quod non pateris, ut eo cibo vescamur, quem tu ipse capere nec velis nec possis!'

### 25. *Beware of a Flatterer.*

Corvus alicunde caseum rapuerat, et cum illo in altam arborem subvolaverat. Vulpecula illum caseum appetens

1. *requiro*: sc. obj. (anteced. of qui). — *allēvare*, to raise. (*allēvare* = to make smooth.)

2. *subeo*: sc. id = onus (onus subire = take on one's back).

3. *scriptum legimus*: we look for what construction after this idea? — *tempestat*, time. Trans. qua t. by a temporal conj.

4. *anus*, -us, lit. an old woman, but in appos. = adj. aged.

5. *maeror*, sorrow.

8. *copia* is abl. — *inopinatus*,

sudden, unlooked for. — *exanimare*: infer meaning from ex + anima (the breath of life).

9. *iacebat*: from *iaceo*, -ēre or from *iacio*, -ere? — *praesaepi*, -is, manger. — *latrando*: gerund from *latrare*, to bark.

10. *invidia*, jealousy.

11. *pati* (patior), NOT *patēre* (pateo). — *vesci*, (vescor), to eat, takes what case?

13. *alicunde*, from some source.

14. *subvolare*, to fly up.

corvum blandis verbis adoritur; cumque primum formam eius pennarumque nitorem laudavisset, 'Pol,' inquit, 'te avium regem esse dicerem, si cantus pulchritudini tuae responderet.' Tum ille laudibus vulpis inflatus etiam cantu  
 5 se valere demonstrare voluit. Ita vero e rostro aperto caseus delapsus est, quem vulpes arreptum devoravit.

### 26. *Cold Comfort.*

In eadem navi vehebantur duo, qui inter se capitalia odia exercebant. Unus eorum in prora, alter in puppi residebat. Orta ingenti tempestate, cum omnes de vita desperarent,  
 10 interrogat is, qui in puppi sedebat, gubernatorem, utram partem navis prius submersum iri existimaret. Cui gubernator, 'Proram,' respondit. Tum ille, 'Iam mors mihi non molesta est, cum inimici mei mortem adspecturus sim.'

### 27. *The Sensible Goat.*

15 Lupus capram in alta rupe stantem conspiciens, 'Cur non,' inquit, 'relinquis nuda illa et sterilia loca, et huc descendis in herbidos campos, qui tibi laetum pabulum offerunt!' Cui respondit capra: 'Mihi non est in animo, dulcia tutis praeponere.'

1. adoriri, *to accost* (often means *to assail*).

2. nitor, *lustre*. — pol, *truly* (lit. *by Pollux*).

5. rostrum, *beak, bill*.

7. inter se capitalia odia exercebant, *were cherishing toward each other deadly hatred* (*capitalis*, lit. *relating to a matter of life and death*).

8. prora, *proa*. — puppis, *the stern of the vessel*. — residebat: what about the preposition (re-) in compound verbs?

12. gubernator, *helmsman*.

17. herbidos, *grassy*.

18. dulcia: neut. pl. = subst.

19. praeponere, *to prefer*.

28. *Let well enough alone.*

Mulier vidua, quae texendo vitam sustentabat, solebat ancillas suas de nocte excitare ad opus, cum primum galli cantum audivisset. At illae diuturno labore fatigatae statuerunt gallum interficere. Quo facto, deteriore conditione quam prius esse coeperunt: nam domina de hora 5 noctis incerta nunc famulas saepe iam prima nocte excitabat.

29. *The Price of Good Living.*

Lupus canem videns bene saginatum, 'Quanta est,' inquit, 'felicitas tua! Tu, ut videris, laute vivis, at ego fame enecor.' Tum canis, 'Licet,' inquit, 'mecum in urbem venias et eadem felicitate fruaris.' Lupus condicionem accepit. Cum una 10 eunt, animadvertit lupus in collo canis attritos pilos. 'Quid hoc est?' inquit. 'Num iugum sustines? cervix enim tua tota est glabra. Nihil est,' canis respondit. 'Sed interdium me adligant, ut noctu sim vigilantior; atque haec sunt vestigia collaris, quod cervici circumdari solet.' Tum lupus, 15 'Vale,' inquit, 'amice! nihil moror felicitatem servitute emptam.'

1. *texendo*: gerund of *texere*, to weave (not *tegere*, to cover).

2. The possessive *suus*, like the reflexive *sui*, refers logically to what part of the sentence?—*excitare*, to wake up.—*gallus*, a cock.

3. *diuturnus*, prolonged.

6. *incerta*: nom. c.—*famula*, maid-servant.—*prima nocte*, lit. at night fall, i.e., during the early part of the night.

7. *saginare*, to fatten.

8. *laute*: sumptuously.—*enecare*, to wear out, torment.

11. *animadvertere*, to notice.—*atterere* (-o), -trivi, -tritum, to rub off.—*pilus*, hair.

12. *cervix*, neck.

13. *glaber*, without hair.

14. *adligare*, to tie up.

15. *collare*, -is, collar, neck-chain.

16. *vale*, good-bye!—*nihil morari*, to care nothing about, i.e., not to value.

30. *Athens' 'Wooden Walls.'*

Cum Xerxes et mari et terra bellum universae inferret Europae cum tantis copiis, quantas neque ante nec postea habuit quisquam — huius enim classis mille et ducentarum navium longarum fuit, quam duo milia onerariarum sequen-  
 5 bantur, terrestres autem exercitus DCC peditum, equitum CCCC milia fuerunt — cuius de adventu cum fama in Graeciam esset perlata et maxime Athenienses peti dicerentur propter pugnam Marathoniam, miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, ut  
 10 moenibus ligneis se munirent. Id responsum quo valeret cum intellegeret nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, ut in naves se suaeque conferrent: eum enim a deo significari murum ligneum.

31. *The Famous Horse of a Famous General.*

Equus Alexandri regis nomine 'Bucephalus' fuit. Super  
 15 hoc equo dignum memoria visum, quod, ubi ornatus erat

1. **Xerxes**, king of Persia B.C. 485-465, invaded Greece B.C. 480. — **et mari et terra** = *terra marique*.

2. **Europae**: most verbs compounded with *in* (also *ad*, *ante*, etc.) have what case construction?

3. **huius**, i.e., **Xerxes**. — **classis**, *fleet*.

4. **naves longae**, *war-vessels*, which were longer (for speed) than the burden-ships (*n. onerariae*).

7. **petere**, *to attack*; aim a blow at.

8. **Marathonius** (*adj.*), of *Marathon*. Here the Athenians defeated the Persians B.C. 490. — **Delphi**, -**orum**, a town in Phocis, famous

because of its oracle of **Apollo** (-*inis*). The priestess who uttered the responses of the god was called **Pythia**. — **consultum**: supine expressing purpose.

10. **ligneus** (*adj.*): suffix? (*lignum*, *wood*). — **quo valeret**: *what the response meant*, lit. *how it availed*.

11. **persuasit**: sc. *Atheniensibus*.

12. **eum**: with **murum** l.

14. **Bucephalus** was so called from the breadth of his fore-head (*βούς* + *κεφαλή*, *ox-head*). — **super**: notice the case which follows.

15. **vidēre** in *pass.* generally means *what?*

armatusque ad proelium, haud umquam inscendi sese ab alio, nisi ab rege passus sit. Id etiam de isto equo memoratum est, quod, cum insidens in eo Alexander bello Indico et facinora faciens fortia in hostium cuneum non satis sibi providens inmisisset, coniectis undique in Alexandrum telis, 5 vulneribus in cervice atque in latere equus perfossus est : moribundus tamen ac prope iam exsanguis e mediis hostibus regem vivacissimo cursu rettulit atque, ubi eum extra tela extulerat, ilico concidit et, domini iam superstitis securus, animam expiravit. Tum rex Alexander, parva eius belli 10 victoria, oppidum in isdem locis condidit idque ob equi honores 'Bucephalon' appellavit.

### 32. *The End of Hannibal.*

Hannibal had, before this time, fled to Prusias, king of Bithynia, a country bordering on the Pontus Euxinus.

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri, idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usu 15 veniret, quod accidit. Huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. Qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores

1. *inscendere*, to mount, lit. to climb up.

3. *quod*, how that. — *Indicus*, Indian.

4. *cuneus*, a column of troops (somewhat wedge-shaped in formation).

5. *inmittere* (sc. se or equum), to throw one's self against (in); to rush, or ride.

7. *moribundus*, dying.

9. *ilico*, on the spot, instantly. — From *concidere*, not *concidere*. — *superstes*, -itis, surviving (another's death). — *securus*, assured of (se + cura).

15. *exitus*, -us: not the subject of *haberet*. — *scilicet*, evidently. — *usu venire*, to happen.

17. *puer*: a slave of Hannibal.

19. *fores*, -um, door.

aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. Puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam  
 5 esse retinendam. Quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit.

### 33. *An Effeminate Monarch.*

Postremus apud eos regnavit Sardanapalus, vir muliere corruptior. Ad hunc videndum (quod nemini ante eum  
 10 permissum fuerat) praefectus ipsius Medis praepositus, nomine Arbactus, cum admitti aegre obtinuisset, invenit eum inter mulierum greges purpuras colorem et muliebri habitu pensa inter virgines partientem. Quibus visis indignatus tali feminae tot viros tractantes ferrum et arma  
 15 habentes parere, progressus ad socios quid viderit refert; negat se ei parere posse, qui se feminam malit esse quam virum. Fit igitur coniuratio: bellum Sardanapalo infertur. Quo ille audito, non ut vir regnum defensurus, sed, ut metu mortis mulieres solent, primo latebras circumspicit, mox

1. *propere*, quickly.

4. *fortuito*, by chance. — Observe that *neque* is frequently better rendered by *and . . . not* (modifying the verb) than by *neither*.

5. *quam* as a relat. (note gender) refers back to what?

8. *apud eos*: the Assyrians, whose monarch S. was.

10. *praefectus*, governor, lit. *overseer*. — At this time the *Medi* (-orum) constituted a portion of the Assyrian empire.

11. *aegre*, with difficulty, scarcely.

12. *purpura*, -ae, purple garment, lit. *purple color*. — *colus*, distaff. — *nēre*, to spin.

13. *pensum*, a task, or tale of work, lit. *an amount of wool weighed out* (*pendere*). — *visum*, something seen, i.e., sight, or *visis* may be partic. with *quibus*.

15. *parēre*, or *parere*, — from which?

19. *latebra*, hiding-place.

deinde cum paucis et incompressis in bellum progreditur. Victus in regiam se recepit, ubi exstructa incensaque pyra et se et divitias suas in incendium mittit, hoc solo imitatus virum. Post hunc rex constituitur interfector eius Arbactus, qui praefectus Medorum fuerat. Is imperium ab Assyriis 5 ad Medos transfert.

### 34. *A Lesson in Good Manners.*

Memoriae proditum est, cum Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, magno consessu locum nusquam ei datum a suis civibus : cum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui, legati cum essent, certo in loco 10 consederant, consurrexisse omnes illi dicuntur et senem sessum recepisse. Quibus cum a cuncto consessu plausus esset multiplex datus, dixisse ex iis quemdam, Athenienses scire, quae recta essent, sed facere nolle.

1. Sc. militibus with paucis et incompressis (*undisciplined*).

2. regia, palace (of the rex); capital. — pyra, funeral-pyre.

7. memoriae prodere (or tradere), to hand down to posterity. Notice that it = a verb of saying: accordingly transl. *it is said* or *told (that)*. — cum is temporal. — Athenis is locative. — ludis: sc. Panathenaicis. The Panathenaic festival was celebrated at Athens in honor of Athene.

8. grandis natu = senex. — consessus, assembly.

9. datum: sc. esse. In translating the main clause of oratio

obliqua what English particle should introduce it? — Lacedaemonii, Spartans, Lacedaemonians.

10. qui refers to whom? — cum: the subordinate connective need not be the first word of its clause.

11. consurgere: observe the force of the preposition: *en masse*, or, *to a man*.

12. sessum recepisse, to have invited the old man to be seated, lit. to have received the old man seated (among them). — plausus multiplex = plausus maximus.

13. dixisse depends on proditum est understood.

14. quae: nom. pl. neut.



## 35. 'Necessity the Mother of Invention' illustrated.

Hinc tamen multis suis amissis se expedit et in castellum Phrygiae, quod Nora appellatur, confugit. In quo cum circumsederetur et vereretur, ne uno loco manens equos militares perderet, quod spatium non esset agitandi, callidum fuit eius inventum, quemadmodum stans iumentum concalefieri exerce-  
 5 que posset, quo libentius et cibo uteretur et a corporis motu non removeretur. Substringebat caput loro altius, quam ut prioribus pedibus plane terram posset attingere, deinde post verberibus coge-  
 10 bat exsultare et calces remittere: qui motus non minus sudorem excutiebat, quam si in spatio decurreret. Quo factum est, quod omnibus mirabile est visum, ut aequae iumenta nitida ex castello educeret, cum complures menses in obsidione fuisset, ac si in campestribus ea locis habuisset.

## 36. Alexander enters Babylon.

Alexander entered Babylon in the spring of B.C. 324.

15 Ceterum Babylona procedenti Alexandro Mazaeus, qui ex acie in eam urbem confugerat, cum adultis liberis supplex

2. Phrygia: a country of Asia Minor.—In quo: a relative followed by a "subordinate connective" (cum) is equivalent to what?

3. circumse-*dē*re, to blockade.

4. callidus, ingenious.

5. inventum: subst.—quemadmodum, how.

6. concalefacere, to warm thoroughly. (Passive, — fieri.) — quo = ut eo (purpose clause).

7. corporis motu, physical exercise.

8. lorum, strap.—posset: subj. is iumentum.

9. post: here = adverb, not preposit.—verber, -eris, whip.—exsultare, to spring, caper.—calx, heel.

10. sudor, sweat.

12. aequae . . . nitida, in just as good condition, lit. equally sleek, well-conditioned. What idea do we logically look for to complete this expression?

14. ea: refers to iumenta.

16. adolescere (-olesco), -evi, -ultum, to grow up, reach maturity.—supplex, -icis, begging, suppliant.

occurrit, urbem seque dedens. Gratus adventus eius fuit regi : quippe magni operis obsidio futura erat tam munitae urbis. Ad hoc vir illustris et manu promptus famaue etiam proximo proelio celebris et ceteros ad deditionem sui incitaturus exemplo videbatur. Igitur hunc quidem benigne cum liberis excipit : ceterum quadrato agmine, quod ipse ducebat, velut in aciem irent, ingredi suos iubet. Magna pars Babyloniorum constiterat in muris, avida cognoscendi novum regem ; plures obviam egressi sunt. Inter quos Bagophanes, arcis et regiae pecuniae custos, ne studio a Mazaeo vinceretur, totum iter floribus coronisque constraverat, argenteis altaribus utroque latere dispositis, quae non ture modo, sed omnibus odoribus cumulaverat. Dona eum sequebantur greges pecorum equorumque ; leones quoque et pardales caveis praeferebantur. Magi deinde suo more carmen canentes, post hos Chaldaei Babyloniorumque non vates modo, sed etiam artifices ibant : laudes hi regum canere soliti, Chaldaei siderum motus ostendere. Equites deinde Babylonii ultimi ibant. Rex armatis stipatus oppidanorum turbam post ultimos pedites ire iussit ; ipse cum curru urbem ac deinde regiam intravit.

2. obsidio, -onis.

3. ad hoc, *besides this, moreover.*

4. celebris (= celeber) is here masc. — deditio, -onis. Infer meaning from dedere.

6. agmine quadrato, *in hollow square* (ready to fight at short notice).

8. avidus, *desirous of.*

9. obviam : sc. ei, dat. after ob; with verbs of motion obviam = *to meet*, lit. *in the way.*

11. corona, *garland.* — ster-

nere (sterno), stravi, stratum, *to strew.*

13. tus, turis, *frankincense.* — cumulare, *to heap up.*

15. pardalis, *panther.* — cavea, *cage.* — Magi, -orum, a class of Persian magicians.

16. Chaldaei : nom. pl.

17. vates, *seer, soothsayer.* — artifex, -icis, *artist, artificer.*

20. stipare, *to surround, attend.* — turba, *crowd*, lit. *uproar, disorder.*

37. *Reynard at his Tricks.*

Cum decidisset vulpes in puteum inscia  
et altiore clauderetur margine,  
devenit hircus sitiens in eundem locum ;  
simul rogavit, esset an dulcis liquor  
et copiosus? Illa fraudem moliens,

‘Descende, amice ; tanta bonitas est aquae,  
voluptas ut satiari non possit mea.’

Immisit se barbatus. Tum vulpecula  
evasit puteo, nixa celsis cornibus,  
hircumque clauso liquit haerentem vado.

38. *How a Boy's Tongue was unloosed.*

Filius Croesi regis, cum iam fari per aetatem posset,  
infans erat et, cum iam multum adolevisset, item nihil fari  
quibat. Mutus adeo et elinguis diu habitus est. Cum in  
patrem eius, bello magno victum et urbe, in qua erat, capta,  
hostis gladio deducto, regem esse ignorans, invaderet,  
diduxit adulescens os, clamare nitens, eoque nisu atque  
impetu nodumque linguae rupit planeque et articulate  
elocutus est, clamans in hostem, ne rex Croesus occideretur.  
Tum et hostis gladium reduxit et rex vita donatus est et  
adulescens loqui prorsum deinceps incepit.

1. puteus, a well.
2. margo, -inis, margin.
3. hircus, goat. — sitiens, thirsty. Pres. part. of sitire.
5. moliri, to plan.
8. barbatus: refers to the goat. Infer meaning from suffix and barba, beard.
9. niti (nitor), nixus and nixus sum, to rest upon, support one's self.
10. vadum, bottom.

11. Croesus, king of Lydia. — fari (for), to speak.
12. infans, tongue-tied, dumb (in, not, + fari).
13. quire (queo), to be able. — elinguis, -e, (e + lingua).
14. victum: from vincere or vincere?
15. deducto = stricto or educto.
16. diducere, not deducere.
17. nodus, impediment, lit. knot.
20. prorsum, directly.

39. *A Primitive Picture.*

Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt; hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

40. *An Odd Way to Win a Suit-at-law.*

Sophocles, the great Grecian tragic poet, died B.C. 406 at the age of 90.

Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragoedias fecit; quod propter studium cum rem negligere familiarem videretur, a filiis in iudicium vocatus est, ut illum, quasi desipientem,

3. quotannis, *every year.*

5. in vicem, *in turn.* Also written invicem, vicem, in vices, and per vices.

6. ratio, -onis, *theory.*

7. usus, -us, *practice.* — agri: partitive genit. depending on nihil.

12. vestitus, -us, *clothing.* Here genit. depending on what?

13. exiguitas, -atis: infer meaning from suffix and exiguus, *scanty, small.*

14. lavari: Pass. reflexive of lavare = *to bathe one's self.*

15. tragoedia, *tragedy.* — quod: notice that the subordinate connective of this clause is cum.

16. studium, for what?

17. ut: observe the MODE and meaning of the verb of the clause introduced by ut, and infer therefrom its meaning. — desipere (-sippiō), *to be foolish, play the fool.*

a re familiari removerent iudices. Tum senex dicitur eam fabulam, quam in manibus habebat et proxime scripserat, Oedipum Coloneum recitasse iudicibus, quaesissetque, num illud carmen desipientis videretur. Quo recitato, sententiis  
5 iudicum est liberatus.

41. *The Oath of the Boy Hannibal.*

Hannibal tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit: 'Pater meus,' inquit, 'Hamilcar, puerulo me, utpote non amplius novem annos nato, in Hispaniam  
10 imperator proficiscens Karthagine, Iovi optimo máximo hostias immolavit. Quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne secum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accepiissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, faciam, inquit, si mihi fidem, quam  
15 postulo, dederis. Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque, ceteris remotis, tenentem iurare iussit, numquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore. Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetatem ita

2. *fabula*, play, drama.—in *manibus*, on hand, i.e., written, but not having received the finishing touches.

3. The Oedipus Coloneus was the last of S.'s plays.

4. *videretur*: sc. esse.

6. *tempore dato*: i.e., for an audience with the king, Antiochus, of Syria, to whom H. had fled.—*ei* (que) is dat. sing.

7. *odium*, hatred.

8. *puerulus*: infer meaning from suffix.

9. *utpote*, namely, as.—*nato*

agrees with me.—*Hispania*, Spain.

10. *Karthago*, -inis, Carthage in Africa.

11. *hostia*, victim (for sacrifice).—*immolare*, to sacrifice; cf. Eng. *immolate*.—*Quae*: relative or demonstrative? why?

14. *dubitare*: observe that *dubitare* is followed by the infinit. Accordingly it does not mean *to doubt*, which is followed by what construction?

16. *tenentem*: sc. me, subject of what?

conservavi, ut nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus.'

#### 42. *A Cold Bath.*

Cum Tarsum venisset, captus Cydni fluminis amoenitate per mediam urbem influentis, proiectis armis, plenus pulveris ac sudoris in praefrigidam undam se proiecit. Tum repente tantus nervos eius occupavit rigor, ut, interclusa voce, non spes modo remedii, sed ne dilatio quidem periculi inveniretur. Unus erat ex medicis, nomine Philippus, qui solus remedium pollicetur; sed et ipsum Parmenionis pridie a Cappadocia missae epistolae suspectum faciebant, qui ignarus infirmis tatis Alexandri scripserat, a Philippo medico caveret, nam corruptum illum a Dareo ingenti pecunia esse. Tutius tamen ratus dubiae se fidei medici credere quam indubitato morbo perire. Accepto igitur poculo, epistulas medico tradidit atque ita inter bibendum oculos in vultum legentis intendit. Ut securum conspexit, laetior factus est sanitatemque quarta die recepit.

1. quin: transl. *but that*.

3. Tarsus, a city of Cilicia in Asia Minor. — venisset: sc. Alexander. — Cydnos, -i, a river of Cilicia. — amoenitas: infer meaning from suffix and *amoenus*, *pleasant, charming*.

5. praefrigidus: meaning of prefix *prae*?

6. non . . . modo = non modo non. (A. and G. § 149 *e.*; H. § 552, 2.) Sc. inveniretur.

7. dilatio, -onis, *putting off, delaying*.

9. et = etiam. — Parmenio, -onis: one of Alexander's gener-

als, at this time temporarily in Cappadocia.

11. scripserat . . . caveret: affirmative command in indirect discourse without ut (A. and G. 339; G. 665; H. 523, III., NOTE).

12. corruptum . . . esse: why infinit. ? — Dareus III., the last of the Persian kings. — tutius: pred. after esse sc.

13. ratus: sc. est. Subject of verb is the main subject of discourse, i.e., Alexander.

16. securus, *unconcerned*. — sanitas: infer meaning from adj. sanus.

43. *Faithful unto Death.*

Damonem et Phintiam ferunt hoc animo inter se fuisse, ut, cum eorum alteri Dionysius tyrannus diem necis destinasset et is, qui morti addictus esset, paucos sibi dies commendandorum suorum causa postulavisset, vas factus sit  
 5 alter eius sistendi, ut, si ille non revertisset, moriendum esset ipsi. Qui cum ad diem se recepisset, admiratus eorum fidem tyrannus petivit, ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent.

44. *The Man Caesar.*

Fuisse traditur excelsa statura, colore candido, teretibus  
 10 membris, ore paulo pleniore, nigris vegetisque oculis, valetudine prospera; nisi quod tempore extremo repente animo linqui, atque etiam per somnum exterreri solebat. Comitiali quoque morbo bis inter res agendas correptus est. Circa

1. *Damon*, a friend of *Phintias* (-ae), not *Pythias* as commonly written. — *ferunt*, they say.

2. *tyrannus*: i.e., of Syracuse, in Sicily.

4. *commendandorum*: as he was to die, he naturally wished to entrust his belongings, including his family, to the care of his friends. — *vas, vadis* (mas.), *bail for producing him in court* (sistere), lit. *of him to be produced*. *vas* is pred. nom. after *factus est* (became).

6. *ad diem*: i.e., appointed for the execution. — *se recipere*, (here) to return.

7. *se* (with which *tertium* agrees) refers to what part of the sentence?

9. *traditur*: sc. *C. Julius Caesar*, or read impersonally, supplying personal subj. of *fuisse*. — *teres, -etis*, *well-rounded*.

10. *vegetus*, *lively*.

11. *extremus*: some adjectives, like *summus*, *extremus*, *medius*, *reliquus*, refer to a PART OF THE OBJECT with which they agree. (A. and G. § 193; H. § 440, 2, N. 1 and 2.) — *animo linqui*, to have fainting fits.

13. *morbus comitialis*, *epilepsy*: so called, because, as an inauspicious sign, its occurrence caused a postponement of the comitia. — *bis*, on two occasions: once when absent in Africa and once when in Spain.

corporis curam morosior, ut non solum tonderetur diligenter ac raderetur, sed velleretur etiam, ut quidam exprobraverunt; calvitii vero deformitatem iniquissime ferret, saepe obrectatorum iocis obnoxiam expertus. Ideoque et deficientem capillum revocare a vertice assueverat, et ex omnibus 5 decretis sibi a senatu populoque honoribus, non aliud aut recepit aut usurpavit libentius, quam ius laureae coronae perpetuo gestandae. Etiam cultu notabilem ferunt. Usui enim lato clavo ad manus fimbriato, nec ut unquam aliter quam super eum cingeretur, et quidem fluxiore cinctura. 10 Unde emanasse Sullae dictum, optimates saepius admonentis, ut male praecinctum puerum caverent. Armorum et equitandi peritissimus, laboris ultra fidem patiens erat. In agmine nonnunquam equo, saepius pedibus anteibat, capite detecto, seu sol, seu imber esset; longissimas vias 15 incredibili celeritate confecit, expeditus, meritoria raeda, centena passuum milia in singulos dies; si flumina morarentur, nando traiciens vel innixus inflatis utribus, ut persaepe nuntios de se praeveniret. Utebatur autem equo insigni, pedibus prope humanis et in modum digitorum 20 ungulis fissis, quem natum apud se magna cura aluit.

1. morosus, *morose*, but here (in comparative), *very particular, careful*. — tondere (tondeo), *to shear, clip*.

2. vellere, *to pull out* (by the roots). — exprobrare, *to cast in one's teeth; make a matter of reproach*.

3. calvitium, *balddness*. — obrectatorum iocis: *jests* (iocus, -i) of (his) detractors = enemies (obrectator, -oris).

4. obnoxius, *exposed to*.

5. revocare = pectere, *to comb*. — vertex, *the crown of the head*.

6. decretis: participle from *decernere*, not *decrescere*.

7. usurpare, *to use*. — laureus, (adj.) *laurel or bay*.

9. lato clavo = *tunica latidavia*, i.e., a *tunic* with the *latus clavus*, or broad purple stripe. The sleeves were fringed (*fimbriatus*) and worn long (*ad manus*).

16. meritorius, *hired*. — raeda, (four wheeled) *travelling-carriage*.

18. nare (no), *to swim*. — uter, -tris, *bag of hide, skin*.

21. ungula, *hoof*. — findere, (*findo*), *fidi, fissum*.



45. *Caesar's Assassination.*

Caesar was murdered at a meeting of the senate on the fifteenth of March, B.C. 44, — the result of a conspiracy headed by Marcus Brutus, whose ostensible object was to restore liberty to the republic.

Adsidentem conspirati specie officii circumsteterunt : ilicoque Cimber Tillius, qui primas partes suscepserat, quasi aliquid rogaturus propius accessit ; renuentique et gestu in aliud tempus differenti ab utroque umero togam apprehendit : deinde clamantem, 'Ista quidem vis est !' alter e Cascis aversum vulnerat, paulum infra iugulum. Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphio traiecit ; conatusque prosilire, alio vulnere tardatus est. Utque animadvertit, undique se strictis pugionibus peti, toga caput obvolvit ; simul sinistra  
 10 manu sinum ad ima crura deduxit, quo honestius caderet, etiam inferiore corporis parte velata. Atque ita tribus et viginti plagis confossus est, uno modo ad primum ictum gemitu sine voce edito : etsi tradiderunt quidam Marco Bruto inruenti dixisse, καὶ σὺ, τέκνον ; exanimis, diffugientibus

1. adsidere (-sido), to sit down. Sc. Caesarem. — officium, respect.

2. ilico, there, at once. — partes (pl. of pars), a part or rôle (in a play or action of any sort). Here in what ?

3. renuere (-nuo), to refuse. Sc. Caesari with renuenti.

4. umerus, shoulder.

5. vis, force = violence. — Casca : among the conspirators were the two brothers, P. and C. Servilius Casca.

6. aversum : i.e., in the breast. — iugulum, throat, lit. collar-bone.

7. graphium, a writing-stylus. — traicere (-cio), to stab or pierce through.

9. stringere (stringo), -inxi, -ictum, to draw (weapon). — pugio, dagger.

10. honeste, becomingly, decently.

11. velare, to cover.

12. plaga, blow, wound. Distinguish from plaga, region, and plaga, hunting-net, trap. — confossus est : infer from fodere (fodio).

13. edere (ēdo), -didi, -ditum, to give out, utter. Edere (ēdo), edi, esum, means to eat.

14. inruere (-ruo), to rush upon. — καὶ σὺ, τέκνον ; and you, child ? We learn from Plutarch (Brutus 5) that Caesar recognized Brutus as his own son. — exanimis, -e, (also exanimus), lifeless.

cunctis, aliquandiu iacuit, donec lecticae impositum, dependente brachio, tres servuli domum rettulerunt.

46. *Dying Twice.*

Defectus annis et desertus viribus  
leo cum iaceret spiritum extremum trahens,  
aper fulmineis ad eum venit dentibus 5  
et vindicavit ictu veterem iniuriam :  
infestis taurus mox confodit cornibus  
hostile corpus. Asinus, ut vidit ferum  
impune laedi, calcibus frontem extudit.  
At ille expirans, 'Fortes indigne tuli 10  
mihi insultare : te, naturae dedecus,  
quod ferre cogor, certe bis videor mori.'

47. *An Oriental Queen.*

Ninus was, with his wife, Semiramis, a mythical founder of the Assyrian empire. Zoroaster, or Zoroastres, here called a king of the Bactriani, was a Median law-giver and founder of Zoroastrianism.

Postremum bellum Nino fuit cum Zoroastre, rege Bactrianorum, qui primus dicitur artes magicas invenisse et mundi principia siderumque motus diligentissime spectasse. Hoc 15  
occiso et ipse decessit, relicto adhuc impubere filio Ninya et uxore Semiramide.

1. lectica, *litter*.

2. servulus : diminutives often express what idea other than the diminutive one?

3. defectus, *worn out, weakened*.

5. aper, -pri, *wild boar*. — fulmineus, *murderous*, lit. *belonging to the thunderbolt* (fulmen).

8. hostilis : *transl. of his enemy*.

9. laedere, *to strike*. — extundere (-tundo), -tudi, -tusum, *to kick*.

10. indigne ferri (or pati), *to take offense, or feel hurt at*.

11. te : sc. mihi insultare.

12. quod is causal.

16. et ipse, *likewise*. — impuberis, *youthful, immature*. — Ninyas (or Ninya), -ae.

Haec neque filio immaturo ausa tradere imperium nec ipsa palam tractare, tot ac tantis gentibus vix patienter uni viro nedum feminae parituris, simulat se pro uxore Nini filium. Magnas deinde res gessit. Haec Babyloniam condidit murumque urbi cocto latere circumdedit, harenae vice bitumine interstrato, quae materia in illis locis passim invenitur et e terra exaestuat. Multa et alia praeclara huius reginae fuere: siquidem non contenta regni terminos tueri, Aethiopiam quoque imperio adiecit, sed et Indis bellum intulit, quos praeter illam et Alexandrum Magnum nemo intravit.

48. *Not Alone, although Alone.*

Publium Scipionem, eum, qui primus Africanus appellatus est, dicere solitum scripsit Cato, qui fuit fere eius aequalis, nunquam se minus otiosum esse, quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum, quam cum solus esset. Magnifica vero vox et magno viro ac sapiente digna: quae declarat, illum et in otio de negotiis cogitare, et in solitudine secum loqui solitum, ut neque cessaret unquam, et interdum conloquio alterius non egeret. Itaque duae res, quae languorem adferunt ceteris, illum acuebant, otium et solitudo.

49. *An Indian Desert and its People.*

Hinc pervenit ad maritimos Indos. Desertam vastamque regionem late tenent ac ne cum finitimis quidem ullo commercii iure miscentur. Ipsa solitudo natura quoque

1. haec is nom. sing.

3. nedum, *much less*. — parere, gov. what case?

5. coctus, *burned*. — later, -eris, *brick*. Distinguish from latus, -eris. — harena, *sand*. — vice, *instead of* (governs genit.).

12. solitum: orat. obliq. after scripsit.

13. aequalis: *equal* how? —

otiosus, adj. Infer meaning from otium, *freedom from business*, i.e., either *leisure* or *inactivity*.

15. vox here = *sentiment*.

18. egeret: from which verb — egere or egerere?

20. pervenit: sc. *Alexander*.

22. commercium, *trade, commerce*. — ipsa: with solitudo.

immitia efferavit ingenia : prominent unguis nunquam recisi, comae hirsutae et intonsae sunt. Tuguria conchis et ceteris purgamentis maris instruunt. Ferarum pellibus tecti piscibus sole duratis et maiorum quoque beluarum, quas fluctus eiecit, carne vescuntur. Consumptis igitur alimentis Maces-  
dones primo inopiam, deinde ad ultimum famem sentire coeperunt, radices palmarum — namque sola ea arbor gignitur — ubique rimantes. Sed, cum haec quoque alimenta defecerant, iumenta cadere adgressi ne equis quidem abstinebant : et cum deessent, quae sarcinas veherent, 10 spolia de hostibus, propter quae ultima Orientis peragraverant, cremabant incendio.

### 50. *The Old Arcadians.*

Ante Iovem genitum terras habuisse feruntur

Arcades, et Luna gens prior illa fuit.

Vita feris similis, nullos agitata per usus ;

15

artis adhuc expers et rude vulgus erat.

1. immitis, -e, *harsh, savage*. — efferare, to render fierce, (from ex + ferus, wild). Distinguish from efferre, to carry out. — ingenium, natural disposition.

2. coma, hair of the head. — hirsutus, bushy, bristly. — tugurium, hut. — concha, mussel, shell-fish.

3. purgamentum, refuse, (here) anything washed up.

4. belua, monster (any large animal like the whale, elephant, etc.).

5. What case with vesi (vescor) ? — alimentum : infer meaning from suffix and alere (alo).

6. ad ultimum, at last.

7. palma, palm-tree, lit. palm of the hand.

8. ubique, anywhere, i.e., wherever possible. — rimari (rimor), to tear or grub up.

9. adgredi, (-gredior), to proceed, lit. go to.

10. sarcina, baggage, lit. a bundle.

11. ultima : sc. loca. — peragere, to traverse, penetrate.

13. gignere (gigno), genui, genitum. — ferre, (here) to say.

14. Arcades, -um. — Luna is abl.

15. agitare, to carry on, pass. — usus, -us, skill, knowledge of "life."

16. expers, -tis, devoid of, without (followed by genit.).

- Pro domibus frondes norant, pro frugibus herbas ;  
nectar erat palmis hausta duabus aqua.  
Nullus anhelabat sub adunco vomere taurus ;  
nulla sub imperio terra colentis erat ;  
5 nullus adhuc erat usus equi. Se quisque ferebat.  
Ibat ovis lana corpus amicta sua.  
Sub Iove durabant et corpora nuda gerebant,  
docta graves imbres et tolerare notos.

51. *A Sporting Man's Lament.*

Olympia in Elis (in the Peloponnesus) was world-famous for the Olympic Games, celebrated there every four years. Milo (-onis), the most distinguished of Grecian athletes, was an inhabitant of Crotona, or Croton, in southern Italy (Magna Graecia) in the sixth century B.C.

Olympiae per stadium ingressus esse Milo dicitur, cum  
10 umeris sustineret bovem. Utrum igitur has corporis an  
Pythagorae tibi malis vires ingenii dari? Quae enim vox  
potest esse contemptior quam Milonis Crotoniatae? qui,  
cum iam senex esset athletasque se exercentes in curriculo  
videret, aspexisse lacertos suos dicitur inlacrimansque di-  
15 xisse: 'At hi quidem mortui iam sunt.' Non vero tam isti

1. norant = noverant.
2. haurire (-rio), hausi, haustum. — aqua is nom. pred.
3. anhelare, *to pant*. — adun-  
cus, *curved*. — vomer, -eris, *plough-  
share*.
6. lana, *fleece*, is abl. — corpus :  
acc. specific. — amicire (amicio),  
*to clothe*.
7. sub Iove, *under the open heav-  
en*, i.e., not in artificial dwellings.
8. imber, -bris, *rain-storm*. —  
notus (here) = ventus.
9. stadium, *race-course*. — cum  
is not a preposition.

11. Pythagoras, -ae, a famous  
Greek philosopher of Samos, who  
lived and taught at Crotona. —  
malis is a verb.

12. contemptus, *despicable*. —  
Crotoniatae, -ae, *an inhabitant of  
Crotona*.

13. athleta, -ae, *wrestler, prize-  
fighter*. — curriculum, *race-course,  
or ground*.

14. lacertus, *arm* (especially the  
upper muscular part).

15. tam: sc. the needed form  
of mortuus. — isti: nom. pl.; sc.  
the verb.

quam tu ipse, nugator, neque enim ex te umquam es nobilitatus, sed ex lateribus et lacertis tuis.

### 52. One of the 'Seven Wonders of the World.'

As commonly understood, the "seven wonders of the world" were as follows, viz. : 1. The Mausoleum, or tomb of Mausolus. 2. The statue of Jupiter at Olympia, made by Phidias. 3. The colossus of Rhodes, a brazen statue of the Sun-God. 4. The temple of Diana at Ephesus. 5. The walls of Babylon. 6. The palace of Cyrus. 7. The pyramids of Egypt.

Artemisia Mausolum virum amasse fertur supra omnis amorum fabulas ultraque affectionis humane fidem. Mausolus autem fuit, ut M. Tullius ait, rex terrae Cariae. Is Mausolus, ubi fato perfunctus inter lamenta et manus uxoris funere magnifico sepultus est, Artemisia, luctu atque desiderio mariti flagrans uxor, ossa cineremque eius mixta odoribus contusaque in faciem pulveris aquae indidit ebibitque multa alia violenti amoris indicia fecisse dicitur. Molita quoque est sepulcrum illud memoratissimum dignatumque numerari inter septem omnium terrarum spectacula. Id monumentum Artemisia cum dis manibus sacris Mausoli dicaret, certamen laudibus eius dicundis facit

1. nugator : infer meaning from suffix and nugari, to jest, trifle. — neque . . . umquam, and . . . never, lit. nor . . . ever.

2. nobilitare.

3. Artemisia, wife of Mausolus, a King of Caria, who according to Diodorus died B.C. 353.

6. fato perfungi (-fungor), -functus sum, to discharge the debt of nature, die ; lit. to fulfill destiny. — inter manus, in one's arms.

7. sepelire (-io), to bury.

8. maritus, husband. — flagrare,

to be consumed by, lit. to be on fire. — cinis, ashes.

9. contundere (-tundo), -tudi, -tusum or -tunsum, to crush, grind. — facies, -ei, form. — indere (indo), -didi, -ditum, to place into (used with dat.).

11. moliri (-ior), to build.

13. dii manes (-ium), the deified soul, or shade of the departed. \*

14. dicare (dico, but not dicere, to say), to dedicate. — certamen, -inis : infer meaning from suffix and certare, to strive, emulate. — laudibus . . . dicundis : dat. gerundive expressing purpose.

ponitque praemia pecuniae aliarumque rerum bonarum amplissima. Ad eas laudes decertandas venisse dicuntur viri nobiles ingenio atque lingua praestabili. Eo certamine vicisse Theopompum iudicatum est. Is fuit Isocratis 5 discipulus.

53. *Cimon, the Open-handed Athenian.*

Hunc Athenienses non solum in bello, sed etiam in pace diu desideraverunt. Fuit enim tanta liberalitate, cum compluribus locis praedia hortosque haberet, ut nunquam in eis custodem imposuerit fructus servandi gratia, ne quis 10 impediretur, quominus eius rebus, quibus quisque vellet, frueretur. Semper eum pedisequi cum nummis sunt secuti, ut, si quis opis eius indigeret, haberet, quod statim daret, ne differendo videretur negare. Saepe, cum aliquem offensum fortuito videret minus bene vestitum, suum

1. *ponere*, (here) *to offer*.

3. *praestabilis* (adj.): *prae* (*in advance*) + *stare*.

4. *vicisse*: from *vincere* or *vincire*? — Theopompus, Greek orator and historian of the fourth century B.C. — Isocrates, -is, Athenian orator, B.C. 436–338.

5. *discipulus*, *pupil*.

6. *Hunc*: i.e., Cimon.

7. *tanta liberalitate*: after a word like *tantus* we look for what construction, and to be introduced how?

8. *praedium*, *estate*.

9. Distinguish between *servare* and *servire* (-io). — *gratia* and *causa* have what case of dependent nouns? — *quis* (when occurring after *ne*) = what word?

10. After such a verb as *impedire* = *to hinder*, we expect what construction? and introduced by what conjunc.? — *quominus frueretur*: transl. *from enjoying*.

11. *pedisequus* (*pes* + *sequi*), *attendant*, *servant*.

12. *eius* refers to Cimon. — *indigere* (-geo), *to be in need of*. Case used with such a verb?

13. *differendo*: gerund from *differre*, *to put off*, *delay*. — *cum*, *whenever*. The best writers use the indic. with *cum* = *as often as*, not the subjunc. as here.

14. *offensum fortuito*: transl. (*offensum* agr. with *aliquem*), *met casually by him*. From *offendere* (*ob* = *against* + *fendere* = *to thrust*).

amiculum dedit. Cotidie sic cena ei coquebatur, ut, quos invocatos vidisset in foro, omnes devocaret : quod facere nullo die praetermittebat. Nulli fides eius, nulli opera, nulli res familiaris defuit : multos locupletavit, complures pauperes mortuos, qui, unde efferrentur, non reliquissent, suo sumptu extulit.

54. *A Slow General, who had Ready Wit.*

Q. Fabius Maximus received the name Cunctator (*Delaye-*), because, after the terrible defeat at Cannae in the Second Punic War, by his policy of caution and by his refusal to engage in pitched battle with the Carthaginians, he enabled the Romans to recover themselves. In B.C. 209 Fabius retook Tarentum, one of the most important cities of southern Italy, which the Carthaginians had got possession of in 212.

Ego Q. Maximum, eum qui Tarentum recepit, senem adulescens ita dilexi, ut aequalem. Erat enim in illo viro comitate condita gravitas, nec senectus mores mutaverat. Hic et bella gerebat ut adulescens, cum plane grandis esset, et Hannibalem juveniliter exsultantem patientia sua

1. *amiculum* : infer meaning (*amicire, to clothe*). — *coquere* (*coquo*), to cook. Notice tense in translating.

2. *invocatos*, i.e., to dinner.

3. *praetermittere*, to omit, neglect. — *nulli* : the meaning should be clear as soon as the end of the clause (*defuit*) is reached. — *fides* : loyalty, faithfulness.

4. *locupletare*, to improve the condition of.

5. *unde* = *id quo*. — *efferre* (here) = *sepelire*.

6. *comitas* : infer meaning from

*comis, courteous, kind* (in manner and heart). — *condire* (*-dio*), *-ivi, -itum*, to pickle, season, hence, to temper, relieve.

10. *ut* : what other meanings has *ut* than so that, in order that? What here? — *plane grandis*, quite well on in years. (With *grandis* sc. *natu*.)

11. *juveniliter* : Hannibal was less than thirty years old at this time. — *exsultare*, to range at will. — *patientia* means more than patience; cf. with the verb *pati*.



mollebat. Tarentum vero qua vigilantia, quo consilio recepit ! Cum quidem, me audiente, Salinatori, qui amisso oppido fugerat in arcem, glorianti atque ita dicenti : 'Mea opera, Q. Fabi, Tarentum recepisti,' 'Certe,' inquit ridens, 5 'nam nisi tu amisisses, nunquam recepissem !'

55. *A New Style of Hunting.*

Venari asello comite cum vellet leo,  
 contextit illum frutice, et admonuit simul,  
 ut insueta voce terreret feras ;  
 fugientes ipse exciperet. Hic auritulus  
 10 clamorem subito totis tollit viribus,  
 novoque turbat bestias miraculo.  
 Quae dum paventes exitus notos petunt,  
 leonis adfliguntur horrendo impetu.  
 Qui postquam caede fessus est, asinum evocat,  
 15 iubetque vocem premere. Tunc ille insolens :  
 'Qualis videtur opera tibi vocis meae ?'  
 'Insignis,' inquit, 'sic ut, nisi nossem tuum  
 animum genusque, simili fugissem metu.'

2. *Salinatori* : a mistake. It was M. Livius Macatus — not M. Livius Salinator — who lost Tarentum, i.e., the town, but not the citadel. *Salinatori* is dative after *inquit* (line 4).

6. *asellus* : dimin of *asinus*.

7. *frutex*, *bush*. Used here collectively.

8. *insuetus*, *unusual*, *strange*.

9. *auritulus*, *the long-eared one*.

11. *bestia*, *beast*.

12. *Quae* (followed by subord. connect.) = what ? — *exitus*, -us : case ? *ex* + *ire*.

13. *adfligere* (-go), *to throw down*.

14. *fessus*, *wearry*.

15. *premere* = *reprimere* (-primō).

16. *opera*, -ae.

17. *insignis*, *remarkable*. — *nossem* = *novissem*.

56. *The Dolphin.*

Velocissimum omnium animalium, non solum marinorum, est delphinus : ocior volucre, acrior telo, ac, nisi multum infra rostrum os illi foret medio paene in ventre, nullus piscium celeritatem eius evaderet. Sed adfert moram providentia naturae, quia nisi resupini atque conversi non corripunt ; quae causa praecipue velocitatem earum ostendit. Nam cum fame conciti, fugientem in vada ima persecuti piscem, diutius spiritum continuere, ut arcu emissi ad respirandum emicant, tantaque vi exsiliunt, ut plerumque vela navium transvolent.

57. *A Nomadic People.*

Scythia autem in Orientem porrecta includitur ab uno latere Ponto, ab altero montibus Ripaeis, a tergo Asia et Phasi flumine. Multum in longitudinem et latitudinem patet. Hominibus inter se nulli fines : neque enim agrum exercent, nec domus illis ulla aut tectum aut sedes est, armenta et pecora semper pascentibus et per incultas solitudines errare solitis. Uxores liberosque secum in plaustri vehunt, quibus coriis imbrum hiemis causa tectis pro

1. *marinus* (adj.): infer meaning.

2. *ocior* (compar.), *swifter*. — *volucris*, *bird*.

3. *rostrum*, *snout*. — *venter*, *belly*.

5. *resupinus*, *on the back*; cf. Eng. *supine*.

8. *continuere* = *continuerunt*.

10. *velum*, *sail*. — *transvolare*, *to fly over*.

11. *porrigere* (-rigo), -rexi, -rectum, *to stretch out*.

12. *Montes Ripaei* lay north or northwest of Scythia.

13. *Phasis* (acc. *Phasin*), river of Colchis flowing into the Pontus Euxinus.

15. *tectum*: subst.; explained by *in plaustri* (17).

16. *pecora* were small compared with *iumenta*. — *pascentibus* agrees with *illis*, of preceding line. — *incultas*: the prepos. is here privative in force.

17. *plastrum*, *wagon*.

18. *corium*, *hide*, *leather*. — *tectis*: particip. with *quibus*.

domibus utuntur. Iustitia gentis ingeniis culta, non legibus. Nullum scelus apud eos furto gravius, quippe sine tecti munimento pecora et armenta habentibus quid inter silvas superesset, si furari liceret? Aurum et argentum non  
 5 perinde ac reliqui mortales appetunt. Lacte et melle vescuntur.

### 58. *Circumstances alter Cases.*

Deinde facti consules Sempronius Gracchus iterum, Q. Fabius Maximus, filius eius Maximi, qui priore anno erat consul. Ei consuli pater proconsul obviam in equo vehens  
 10 venit neque descendere voluit, quod pater erat, et, quod inter eos sciebant maxima concordia convenire, lictores non ausi sunt descendere iubere. Ubi iuxta venit, tum consul ait: 'quid postea?' Lictor ille, qui apparebat, cito intellexit, Maximum proconsulem descendere iussit. Fabius  
 15 imperio paret et filium conlaudavit, cum imperium, quod populi esset, retineret.

### 59. *Too Much Felicity.*

De Rhodio Diagora celebrata historia est. Is Diagoras tres filios adulescentes habuit, unum pugilem, alterum

2. *furtum, theft.* (fur = thief).

3. *munimentum*: meaning of suffix? — *habentibus*: sc. pronoun in dat. after *super* in the verb.

4. *furari* (not *furere, to rage*). See note to line 2.

5. *perinde, equally.* After *perinde, ac* would naturally have what meaning? — *mel, mellis, honey.*

7. *iterum, a second time.*

8. *Maximi*: i.e., Q. Fabius Maximus Cunctator.

9. *ei*: dat. after *ob-viam* (adv.). Translate *ob-viam, to meet.* — *vehens* = *vectus*.

11. *lictor*: an official attendant of certain high magistrates at Rome, e.g., of the consules.

12. *audēre, not audire.*

17. *Diagoras, -ae*, a Rhodian athlete, who is said to have won victory-crowns at all the great games, Olympian, Nemean, Isthmian and Pythian.

18. *pugil, a boxer.*

pancratiasten, tertium luctatorem. Eos omnes vidit vincere coronarique Olympiae eodem die et, cum ibi eum tres adulescentes amplexi, coronis suis in caput patris positis, suaviarentur, cum populus gratulabundus flores undique in eum iaceret, ibidem in stadio, inspectante populo, in osculis 5 atque in manibus filiorum animam efflavit.

60. *An Ugly Customer.*

Non videtur esse praetermittendum de virtute militis veterani quintae legionis. Nam cum in sinistro cornu elephantus, vulnere ictus et dolore concitatus, in lixam inermem impetum fecisset, eumque sub pede subditum, 10 deinde genu innixus, pondere suo, proboscide erecta vibranti, stridore maximo premeret atque enecaret; miles hic non potuit pati, quin se armatum bestiae offerret. Quem postquam elephantus ad se telo infesto venire animadvertit, relicto cadavere, militem proboscide circumdat atque 15 in sublime extollit armatum. Qui in eius modi periculo cum

1. *pancratiastes, -ae*, a *pancratiast*, i.e., one who took part in the pancratium, a contest which included both boxing and wrestling. — *luctor*: infer from *luctari*, to wrestle. — *vidit*: in lieu of an expressed subject, we think of the main subject of discourse.

2. *coronari*: the victor received a crown of leaves as his prize. — *eum* = *patrem*.

4. *suaviari*, to kiss. — *gratulabundus*, congratulating.

5. *osculum*, kiss, lit. dimin. (of *os*, *oris*) = little mouth.

7. *non videtur . . . de*, it does not seem right to omit mention of

(*de*). Get all possible help from context. In any given case, think of what would likely happen, in view of what has already happened.

9. *icere* (*ico*), to hit, pierce. — *lixa*, camp-follower.

10. *subdere* (*-do*), to place under.

11. *pondere*: abl. of means with the next verb. — *proboscis*, trunk (of elephant).

12. *stridor*, roaring.

13. *pati*, to "stand it," with *quin* = to refrain from.

15. *in sublime*: adverb. — *Qui* refers logically to what word?

constanter agendum sibi videret, gladio proboscidem, qua erat circumdatus, caedere, quantum viribus poterat, non destitit. Quo dolore adductus elephante, milite abiecto, maximo cum stridore cursuque conversus, ad reliquas bestias  
5 se recepit.

61. *A Near Relation to the Bull-Dog.*

Nobiles ad venandum canes in ea regione sunt: latratu abstinere dicuntur, cum viderunt feram, leonibus maxime infesti. Horum vim ut ostenderet Alexandro, in conseptum leonem eximiae magnitudinis iussit emitti et IIII omnino  
10 admoveri canes, qui celeriter feram occupaverunt. Tum ex his, qui adsueverant talibus ministeriis, unus canis leoni cum aliis inhaerentis crus avellere et, quia non sequebatur, ferro amputare coepit. Ne sic quidem pertinacia victa, rursus aliam partem secare institit et inde non segnius inhaeren-  
15 tem ferro subinde caedebat. Ille in vulnere ferae dentes moribundus quoque infixerat; tantam illis animalibus ad venandum cupiditatem ingenerasse naturam memoriae proditum est.

1. sibi: dat. of agent is logically a subject. Sibi refers grammatically to what part of the sentence?

4. conversus: pass. = middle.

6. venari, to hunt.—in ea regione: i.e., India.—latratus, barking.

8. conseptus, enclosure.

9. iussit: sc. rex Indus.

11. adsuescere, -suevi, -sue-

tum, to accustom one's self, i.e., to be accustomed to.—ministerium, work, office.—canis: genit. case.

14. secare, to cut off.—non segnius, all the more tightly, lit. not more inactively.

15. subinde, presently, there-upon.

17. ingenerare, to implant, create.

62. *How Hannibal hid his Money.*

Antiochus was king of Syria, B.C. 223-187, at whose court Hannibal had lived for some years after leaving Carthage and whom Hannibal persuaded to war with Rome.

Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset, si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret, consideraret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore periculo, nisi quid providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium : magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse famam. Itaque capit tale consilium : amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. Has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae, simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. His in errorem inductis, statuas aëneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo domi abiicit.

1. *fugato* : at the battle of Magnesia, B.C. 190. Distinguish between *fugare* and *fugere* (-gio). — *quod* : not a conjunctive adverb.

2. *sui facere potestatem* : to give opportunity, or to allow (others) to have access to one. — *Gortynii* : the people of Gortyna, a city of Crete.

5. *Cretenses, -sium*, the Cretans.

6. *famam* : generally avoid translating Latin words by the English words coming DIRECTLY

from the Latin words in question.

7. *amphora*, a large wine-jar.

8. *summa* (here = substant.), top. — *operire* (*operio*), to cover over. Distinguish between this verb and *operari* (*operor*), to work at and *aperire* (*aperio*), to lay open.

10. *credere*, to entrust.

11. *aëneus* (adj.), bronze.

12. *in propatulo*, in the open air, or court. — *abiicit* : i.e., Hannibal pretended that the statues were of no value.

63. *How Pompeius died.*

Pompeius after the battle of Pharsalos, pursued by Caesar, finally fled to Egypt, where he intended to seek the protection of the boy-king Ptolemaeus. Ptolemaeus had expelled his sister Cleopatra, who had reigned jointly with him.

Pompeius, deposito adeundae Syriae consilio, et aeris magno pondere ad militarem usum in naves imposito, duobusque milibus hominum armatis, Pelusium pervenit. Ibi casu rex erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetate, magnis copiis cum  
 5 sorore Cleopatra bellum gerens; quam paucis ante mensibus per suos propinquos atque amicos regno expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae non longo spatio ab eius castris distabant. Ad eum Pompeius misit, ut pro hospitio atque amicitia patris Alexandria reciperetur atque illius opibus in calami-  
 10 tate tegeretur. Sed, qui ab eo missi erant, confecto legationis officio, liberius cum militibus regis conloqui coeperunt eosque hortari, ut suum officium Pompeio praestarent, neve eius fortunam despicerent. His tunc cognitis rebus, amici regis, qui propter aetatem eius in procuratione  
 15 erant regni, sive timore adducti, ne Pompeius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occuparet, sive despecta eius fortuna; iis, qui erant ab eo missi, palam liberaliter responderunt eumque ad regem venire iusserunt: ipsi, clam consilio inito, Achillan, praefectum regium, singulari hominem audacia, et  
 20 L. Septimium, tribunum militum, ad interficiendum Pompeium miserunt. Ab his liberaliter ipse appellatus naviculam

3. Pelusium: a city at the eastern mouth of the Nile.

9. patris: Ptolemaeus Auletes, who had been restored to his kingdom by the Romans (really through Pompeius).

10. tegere (tego), to protect.

13. fortunam: can be either good or bad.

14. amici regis: Achilles (-ae), mentioned in line 18, was one of these amici. — procuratio, charge, management.

18. Achillan: accus. sing.

19. regium: adj. from regius.

parvulam conscendit cum paucis suis, et ibi ab Achilla et Septimio interficitur.

#### 64. *The Choice of a Husband.*

Melius apud bonos quam apud fortunatos beneficium conlocari puto. Danda omnino opera est ut omni generi satisfacere possimus, sed, si res in contentionem veniet, 5 nimirum Themistocles est auctor adhibendus, qui cum consuleretur utrum bono viro pauperi an minus probato diviti filiam conlocaret: 'Ego vero,' inquit, 'malo virum qui pecunia egeat quam pecuniam quae viro.'

#### 65. *The Founding of Rome.*

Romulus and Remus restored to the Alban throne Numitor in place of his usurping brother Amulius.

Ita, Numitori Albana re permissa, Romulum Remumque 10 cupido cepit in eis locis, ubi expositi erant, urbis condendae. Et supererat multitudo Albanorum Latinorumque; ad id pastores quoque accesserant. Interventit deinde his cogitationibus avitum malum, regni cupido, atque inde foedum certamen

2. interficitur: the murderers hoped to win Caesar's good-will by killing Pompeius.

4. conlocare: (almost =) to employ, use.

6. nimirum, without doubt. — adhibere, to summon as witness.

7. probatus, excellent, lit. proved.

8. (filiam) conlocare, to give in marriage. Transl. here by would. — malo is here a verb.

9. quam after malo means what? — quae: sc. egeat.

10. re = re publica. — permittere, to hand over.

11. expositi erant: i.e., by order of Amulius.

12. superesse, to be more than enough. — Albani, -orum, the people of Alba Longa. — ad id, in addition.

14. avitus, hereditary, lit. of a grandfather. — foedus, shameful.



coortum a satis miti principio. Quoniam gemini essent nec aetatis verecundia discrimen facere posset, ut dei auguriis legerent, qui nomen novae urbi daret, qui conditam imperio regeret, Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum ad inaugurandum templa capiunt. Priori Remo augurium venisse fertur, sex vultures, iamque nuntiato augurio cum duplex numerus Romulo se ostendisset, utrumque regem sua multitudo consalutavit. Inde cum altercatione congressi certamine irarum ad caedem vertuntur; ibi in turba ictus Remus cecidit. Vulgatio fama est ludibrio fratris Remum novos transiluisse muros: inde ab irato Romulo interfectum. Ita solus potitus imperio Romulus; condita urbs conditoris nomine appellata.

#### 66. *Political Virtue versus 'Practical Politics.'*

Aristides, an Athenian statesman, who, because of his virtues, was surnamed "the Just," died about B.C. 468. Themistocles, his great political opponent, and the victor of Salamis, died probably in 449.

Aristides, Lysimachi filius, Atheniensis, aequalis fere fuit Themistocli. Itaque cum eo de principatu contendit: namque obtretrarunt inter se. In his autem cognitum est,

1. principium, *beginning*. — gemini, -orum, *twins*.

2. aetatis verecundia, *regard for age* (of the elder). — augurium, *omen, token*.

3. qui = *uter*.

4. The Mons Palatinus was one of the "seven hills" of Rome. — Mons Aventinus lay southwest of the Palatinus. — Gerund from inaugurare, *to take omen from birds*.

5. templum, *lit. a place marked out for augural observation*. — fertur, *is said*.

7. sua multitudo: *i.e., a company of adherents gathered about each contestant to the throne*.

9. irarum = *irato, agr. with certamine*.

10. vulgatus, *commonly believed*. — fama est = *a verb of saying*. — ludibrium, *derision*.

16. obtrectare, *to be opposed to*.

quanto antestaret eloquentia innocentiae. Quamquam enim adeo excellebat Aristides abstinencia, ut unus post hominum memoriam, quem quidem nos audierimus, cognomine Iustus sit appellatus, tamen a Themistocle collabefactus testula illa exsilio decem annorum multatus est. Qui quidem cum intellexeret reprimi concitatam multitudinem non posse, cedensque animadvertisset quendam scribentem, ut patria pelleretur, quaesisse ab eo dicitur, quare id faceret aut quid Aristides commisisset, cur tanta poena dignus duceretur. Cui ille respondit se ignorare Aristiden, sed sibi non placere, quod tam cupide laborasset, ut praeter ceteros Iustus appellaretur.

67. *The Pen mightier than the Sword.*

Quam multos scriptores rerum suarum ille Alexander secum habuisse dicitur! Atque is tamen, cum in Sigeo ad Achillis tumulum adstisset, 'O fortunate,' inquit, 'adulescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praeconem inveneris!' Et vere. Nam nisi Ilias illa exstisset, idem tumulus, qui corpus eius contexerat, nomen etiam obruisset.

1. eloquentia, *power of words*, "gift of the gab," contrasted with innocentia, *uprightness*.

2. adeo, *to such an extent, so much*. — abstinencia, *disinterestedness*. — unus = *he alone*.

4. collabefieri, (-flo), -factus sum, *to overthrow*, lit. *shake*. — testula, -ae, dimin. of testa, a bit of pottery, upon which the voter wrote the name of the person whom he wished ostracized, i.e., banished for a fixed term of years.

5. exsilio is abl. (= genit. with

verbs of judicial action). — multare (or mulctare), *to punish, sentence*.

6. concitare, *to excite*.

11. cupide: adv. — laborasset: contracted form for what?

14. Sigeum: a promontory near ancient Troy, where Achilles was buried.

15. tumulus, *sepulchral mound, tomb*.

16. praeco, *herald* (of his valor).

17. Ilias, -adis, *the Iliad* (of Homer).

68. *The Ancient Britons.*

Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaeque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut taleis ferreis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed  
 5 eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis, ut in Gallia, est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.  
 10 Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britannæ vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius.

69. *The Destruction of Persepolis.*

15 In hanc totius Persidis opes congesserant barbari: aurum argentumque cumulatum erat, vestis ingens modus, supellex

1. Homines, *people, population.*
2. Gallicis: sc. aedificiis.
3. talea, *bar.* — nummus, *coin, money.* — plumbum album, *tin (not white lead).*
4. mediterraneus: infer meaning from composite parts and by comparison with adj. in next clause. Be in no haste to settle meaning of an odd word that does not appear at once, that is, from the mere clause-context, or as soon as the clause is finished. The rest of the sentence, by antithesis, or otherwise, will make the meaning plain, especially when taken in the Latin word-order.

5. materia, *material, timber.*
6. cuius (que) = *omnis.*
8. animus, (here =) *amusement.*
9. remissus, *mild* (chiefly because of the Gulf Stream).
12. inficere (-ficio), *to stain.*
13. capillo promisso, *with long (hanging-down) hair.*
14. labrum, *lip.*
15. In hanc: sc. urbem, i.e., Persepolis, which at the time of Alexander was the capital of Persis (-idis) and a favorite royal residence. According to Strabo it vied with Susa in wealth and beauty.
16. vestis, -is, *clothing.* — supellex, -lectilis, *furniture.*

non ad usum, sed ad ostentationem luxus comparata. Itaque inter ipsos victores ferro dimicabatur : pro hoste erat, qui pretiosorem occupaverat praedam, et cum omnia, quae reperiebant, capere non possent, iam res non occupabantur, sed aestimabantur. Lacerabant regias vestes, ad se quisque partem trahentes ; dolabris pretiosae artis vasa caedebant : nihil neque intactum erat neque integrum ferebatur : abrupta simulacrorum membra, ut quisque avellerat, trahebat. Neque avaritia solum, sed etiam crudelitas in capta urbe grassata est : auro argentoque onusti vilia captivorum corpora trucidabant, passimque obvii caedebantur. Multi ergo hostium manus voluntaria morte occupaverunt, pretiosissima vestium induti e muris semetipsos cum coniugibus ac liberis in praeceps iacientes. Quidam ignes subiecerant aedibus, ut cum suis viri cremarentur. Ingens captivae pecuniae modus traditur, prope ut fidem excedat. Ceterum aut de aliis quoque dubitabimus, aut credemus, in huius urbis gaza fuisse c et xx milia talentum. Ex paelicibus una Thais, et ipsa temulenta, maximam apud omnes Graecos initutum gratiam adfirmat, si regiam Persarum iussisset incendi ; expectare hoc eos, quorum urbes barbari delessent. Elbrio

1. *luxus, -us, luxury.*

2. *pro, the same as, as good*

*as.*

5. *lacerare: infer from Engl.*

6. *dolabra, pick, hatchet. — vas, -sis (neut.), vessel.*

8. *simulacrum, statue, image.*

9. *grassari, to prowl, rage.*

10. *onustus, loaded down. — trucidare, to massacre.*

11. *passim, in every direction, promiscuously. — obvius (adj.), in the way.*

13. *se-met-ipsos: -met is an emphatic enclitic. See A. and*

*G. 99, f.; H. 184, 3, and 185, N.*

2; *G. 100, R. I.*

15. *cremare: infer meaning from Engl.*

17. *gaza, royal treasure.*

18. *talentum (sum of money), a talent. Genit. pl. generally talentum. — paelex, concubine.*

19. *temulentus, intoxicated. — gratiam inire apud (ad) aliquem, to gain a person's goodwill, lit. to come into favor with one. Sc. Alexandrum as subject of initutum.*

20. *Persae, -arum, Persians.*

21. *ebrius, tipsy.*

scorto de tanta re ferenti sententiam unus et alter, et ipsi mero onerati, assentiuntur. Rex quoque avidior fuit, quam patientior: 'Quin igitur,' inquit, 'ulciscimur Graeciam et urbi faces subdimus?' Omnes incaluerant mero. Itaque  
 5 surgunt temulenti ad incendendam urbem, cui armati pepercerant. Primus rex ignem regiae iniecit, tum convivae et ministri paelicesque. Multa cedro aedificata erat regia, quae, celeriter igne concepto, late fudit incendium. Quod ubi exercitus, qui haud procul urbe tendebat, con-  
 10 spexit, fortuitum ratus ad opem ferendam concurrit. Sed ut ad vestibulum regiae ventum est, vident regem ipsum adhuc adgerentem igni faces. Omissa igitur, quam portaverant, aqua, aridam materiem in incendium iacere coeperunt.

70. *How Old Fabius was tricked.*

15 Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. In propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. Cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit. Hic clausus locorum angustiiis noctu sine ullo detrimento  
 20 exercitus se expedit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori,

1. scortum, *harlot*.

2. merum, *wine* (unmixed with water).

3. ulcisci (ulciscor), ultus sum, *to avenge*.

4. fax, facis, *firebrand*. — incalescere (incalesco), -calui, *to become heated*.

6. conviva, *guest*.

7. cedrus, *cedar-wood*, is fem.

9. tendere (sc. tentoria), *to stretch tents*, i.e., *to be encamped*.

15. hac pugna: i.e., *Cannae*. —

profectus est: sc. *Hannibal*. As a matter of fact, this did not occur until several years after Cannae.

17. Capua: the chief town of Campania — at this time in the power of the Carthaginians.

18. The Ager Falernus was a wine-bearing district in northern Campania.

19. Hic is adverb.

20. exercitus is not nominative.

dedit verba. Namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuven-  
corum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem  
magnam dispalatam immisit. Quo repentino obiecto visu  
tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi  
extra vallum nemo sit ausus.

5

### 71. *Suicide of Cato Uticensis.*

M. Porcius Cato, surnamed Uticensis from the African town Utica, near Carthage, was a great-grandson of Cato, the Censor. In the civil conflict between Caesar and Pompeius, Cato sided with the latter. After the battle of Thapsus (B.C. 46), Cato, rather than survive the overthrow of the republic, made way with himself.

Complures interim ex fuga Uticam perveniunt. Quos omnes Cato convocatos hortatur, ut servitia manumitterent oppidumque defenderent. Quorum cum partem assentire, partem animum mentemque perterritam atque in fugam  
destinatam habere intellexisset, amplius de ea re agere  
destitit navesque iis adtribuit, ut, in quas quisque partes  
vellet, proficisceretur. Ipse, omnibus rebus diligentissime  
constitutis, cum dormitum isset, ferrum intro clam in cubi-  
culum intulit atque ita se transiecit. Qui cum anima  
nondum exspirata concidisset et, impetu facto in cubiculum

15

1. verba dare (alicui), to deceive, or befool one. — obducta nocte, after dark, lit. night or darkness being drawn about the earth. — sarmentum, fagot, twigs.

2. deligare: not deligere, to choose, select.

3. dispalari, to stray, wander about. — quo: agrees with visu, sight.

6. complures, many persons.

7. servitium, servitude; (in concr.) a body of servants, slaves.

9. animum: obj. of habere.

10. destinare, to resolve. — agere, to urge.

11. adtribuere (-tribuo), to assign.

13. dormitum: supine of dormire, after verb of motion (isset = ivisset). — cubiculum, bed-chamber.

ex suspicione, medicus familiaresque continere atque vulnus obligare coepissent, ipse suis manibus vulnus crudelissime divellit atque animo praesenti se interemit.

## 72. *A Sacrilegious Tyrant.*

Dionysius, the elder, "tyrant" of Syracuse (*Syracusae, -arum*: plur. according to Greek usage), was born about B.C. 430 and died in 367. He did not confine his operations to Sicily, but among other localities included southern Italy. Some of the historical statements here made are disputed.

Dionysius, cum fanum Proserpinae Locris expilavisset,  
 5 navigabat Syracusas; isque cum secundissimo vento cursum teneret, ridens, 'Videtisne,' inquit, 'amici, quam bona a dis immortalibus navigatio sacrilegis detur?' Qui cum ad Peloponnesum classem appulisset et in fanum venisset Iovis Olympii, aureum ei detraxit amiculum grandi pondere, quo  
 10 Iovem ornat e manubiis Karthaginiensium tyrannus Gelo. Atque in eo etiam cavillatus est, aestate grave esse aureum amiculum, hieme frigidum, eique laneum pallium iniecit, cum id esse aptum ad omne anni tempus diceret. Idemque

3. *animo praesenti, deliberately.*

4. *fanum, sanctuary.* Cf. Eng. *fane*. — At Locri (-orum), a town of southern Italy, was a temple of Proserpina, or Persephone. — *expilare, to plunder.*

6. *quam modifies bona.*

7. *sacrilegus, an impious or profane person.*

8. *classem appellere, to land at.* History says nothing of this expedition and Cicero has probably blundered.

9. What case with verbs compounded with *de*?

10. *manubiae, -arum, the money obtained from the sale of booty.* — Gelo or Gelon (-onis), when "tyrant" of Syracuse, had utterly defeated the Carthaginians (at Himera), after they had invaded Sicily with an immense army.

11. *cavillari, to jeer, taunt.*

12. *laneus: infer from lana, wool.* — *pallium, cloak or mantle.*

Aesculapii Epidauri barbam auream demi iussit ; neque enim convenire barbatum esse filium, cum in omnibus fanis pater imberbis esset.

### 73. *A Roman Martyr.*

Marcus Atilius Regulus, a Roman consul during the First Punic War, after being victorious against the Carthaginians, was defeated and made prisoner. The common story of his end, glorified by Horace and others, is here told.

Post haec Karthaginienses Regulum ducem, quem ceperant, petierunt, ut Romam proficisceretur, et pacem a Romanis obtineret, ac permutationem captivorum faceret. Ille Romam cum venisset, inductus in senatum, nihil quasi Romanus egit, dixitque se ex illa die, qua in potestatem Afrorum venisset, Romanum esse desisse. Itaque et uxorem a complexu removit, et senatui suasit, ne pax cum Poenis fieret : illos enim, fractos tot casibus, spem nullam habere ; se tanti non esse, ut tot milia captivorum propter unum se et paucos, qui ex Romanis capti fuerant, redderentur. Itaque obtinuit. Nam Afros pacem petentes nullus admisit. Ipse Karthaginem rediit, offerentibusque Romanis ut eum Romae tenerent, negavit se in ea urbe mansurum, in qua, postquam Afris servierat, dignitatem honesti civis habere non posset. Regressus igitur ad Africam omnibus suppliciiis exstinctus est.

1. At Epidaurus in Argolis was a famous temple of Aesculapius, the god of medicine. — barba, beard. — demere (demo), to remove.

3. pater : i.e., Apollo. — imberbis, adj. : in + barba.

4. haec : sc. mala : Carthaginian reverses.

9. Afer, -fri (lit. African) and Poenus = Karthaginiensis.

10. complexus, embrace.

11. illos . . . habere : depends on the idea of saying implied in suasit.

12. tanti : indefinite value.

19. supplicium, (here) torture.



74. *Cato the Censor.*

M. Porcius Cato, born B.C. 234, died in 149. He was variously surnamed 'Sapiens,' 'Maior,' or 'Censorius.' He was a type of the anti-Hellenic Roman of the Republic. With all his narrowness he was patriotic and honest according to his standards. Cato wrote a book on farming ('de re rustica'), and a work ('origines') covering the history of the city from the foundation to his own age. His colleague in the censorship (184) was L. Valerius Flaccus.

At Cato, censor cum eodem Flacco factus, severe praefuit ei potestati. Nam et in complures nobiles animadvertit et multas res novas in edictum addidit, qua re luxuria reprimetur, quae iam tum incipiebat pullulare. Circiter annos 5 octoginta, usque ad extremam aetatem ab adulescētia, rei publicae causa suscipere inimicitias non destitit. A multis tentatus non modo nullum detrimentum existimationis fecit, sed, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit.

In omnibus rebus singulari fuit industria: nam et agricola 10 sollers et peritus iuris consultus et magnus imperator et probabilis orator et cupidissimus litterarum fuit. Quarum studium etsi senior adripuerat, tamen tantum progressum fecit, ut non facile reperiri possit neque de Graecis neque de Italicis rebus, quod ei fuerit incognitum. Ab adule- 15 scentia confecit orationes. Senex historias scribere instituit. Earum sunt libri septem. Primus continet res gestas regum populi Romani, secundus et tertius unde quaeque civitas

2. potestas = magistratus.

3. The censores issued a formal manifesto (edictum) when they entered upon their office.

4. pullulare, to increase.

7. tentare, to assail. — existimatio, good name, reputation.

10. sollers, skillful. — iuris consultus, lawyer.

11. probabilis, good, acceptable.

— litterae, -arum, (here) literature, learning; sometimes = an epistle, despatches. (littera, -ae = letter of the alphabet.)

12. adripere (-ripio), to take up, apply one's self to.

15. conficere, to compose. (orationem habere = to deliver or pronounce a speech.)

orta sit Italica, ob quam rem omnes Origines videtur appellasse.

### 75. *A Traitor's Fate.*

On the Nones of Dec. B.C. 63 the senate met to pass judgment on such of the Catilinarian conspirators as had been arrested in Rome. Cato argued for death (which Cicero, one of the consuls of the year, favored), while Julius Caesar opposed the motion on the ground that the punishment was illegal. The motion for death prevailed. Cethegus and Statilius, along with the "traitor" of our selection, perished at the hand of the common executioner. Lentulus was not only of high birth (of the Cornelian gens), but had been consul in B.C. 71.

Postquam, ut dixi, senatus in Catonis sententiam discessit, consul, optimum factu ratus noctem quae instabat antecapere, ne quid eo spatio novaretur, tresviros, quae supplicium postulabat, parare iubet; ipse, praesidiis dispositis, Lentulum in carcerem deducit; idem fit ceteris per praetores. Est in carcere locus, quod Tullianum appellatur, ubi paululum descenderis ad laevam, circiter duodecim pedes humi

3. in sententiam (alicuius) discedere, to vote ("divide") in favor of a person's (alicuius) motion.

4. optimum factu, trans. to be best, lit. best to be done, or best in respect to the doing. Latter supine used with adj. (optimum) like abl. of specifi. or dat. (archaic form) of purpose. (A. and G. 302 head-note, and 303 note; G. 435, 437; H. 545, 547.) Sc. esse (after ratus). — antecapere, to anticipate.

5. After ne forms of quis =? — novare, to renew. Cicero fears some new attempt on the part of the conspirators. — tresviri: sc.

capitales: three men, having charge of prisons, executions, etc.

6. dispositis: note the force of the prefix dis-.

8. carcere: the famous jail, now called the "Mamertine Prison," of which the Tullianum was the lower dungeon. To this lower dungeon in olden times access was had only by a round hole in the top of the vaulted roof. Cf. decessus Lentulus in line 4, p. 98.

9. ad laevam (sc. partem), on the left. Also written in laevam, in laevum, a laeva. — humi: i.e., below the surface of the earth, lit. a locative, in the ground.

depressus. Eum muniunt undique parietes atque insuper camera lapideis fornicibus iuncta, sed incultu, tenebris, odore foeda atque terribilis eius facies est. In eum locum postquam demissus est Lentulus, vindices rerum capitalium, quibus praeceptum erat, laqueo gulam fregere. Ita ille patricius ex gente clarissima Corneliorum, qui consulare imperium Romae habuerat, dignum moribus factisque suis exitium vitae invenit.

### 76. *A Green Old Age.*

Appius Claudius Caecus was, as his surname implies, blind, at least in his old age. When Censor (B.C. 312), he began the construction of the first military road (via Appia) and finished the first Roman aqueduct (aqua Appia). He served as consul in 307 and 296. When the senate was about to yield to the persuasive eloquence of Cineas, the ambassador of King Pyrrhus, old Appius Claudius had himself led into the senate-house to make the speech which turned the scale against the invader.

Ad Appii Claudii senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset; tamen is, cum sententia senatus inclinaret ad pacem cum Pyrrho foedusque faciendum, non dubitavit dicere illa, quae versibus persecutus est Ennius:—

“Quo vobis mentes, rectae quae stare solebant  
antehac, dementes sese flexere viai?”

1. paries, -etis.—insuper, *overhead*.

2. camera, *vaulted roof*.—fornix, *arch*.—incultus, -us, *want of cleanliness, or attention*.

3. foedus, *foul*.

4. vindices r. c. refers to the tresviri capitales, or their underlings.

5. laqueus, *halter*.—gula, *neck*; cf. Eng. *gullet*. They were strangled.

7. mos in the plur. means what?

9. accedere with a quod-, or ut-clause has what meaning?

10. pacem: sc. faciendam.

11. foedus, -eris, *league, treaty*.—dubitare: notice that dubitare is used here with the infinit. —not with quin. Hence, with what meaning?

12. versibus: i.e., in his ‘Annals.’—persequi, *to set forth, treat of*.

13. quo: adverb.

14. antehac, *hitherto*.—viai: archaic genit. = viae. Depends on sese flexere and is a Grk. gen. = abl. of separation (A. and G. 243 f. Rem.; G. 373, R. 6 at end; H. 410, v., 4).

ceteraque gravissime — notum enim carmen est et tamen ipsius Appii exstat oratio. Atque haec ille egit septem et decem annos post alterum consulatum, cum inter duos consulatus anni decem interfuissent, censorque ante superiorem consulatum fuisset, ex quo intellegitur Pyrrhi bello grandem sane fuisse. Quattuor robustos filios, quinque filias, tantam domum, tantas clientelas Appius regebat et caecus et senex. Intentum enim animum, tanquam arcum, habebat, nec languescens succumbebat senectuti. Tenebat non modo auctoritatem sed etiam imperium in suos : metuebant servi, verebantur liberi, carum omnes habebant ; vigeat in illa domo mos patrius et disciplina. Ita enim senectus honesta est, si se ipsa defendit, si ius suum retinet, si nemini emancipata est, si usque ad ultimum spiritum dominatur in suos. Ut enim adolescentem, in quo senile aliquid, sic senem, in quo est aliquid adolescentis, probō : quod qui sequitur corpore senex esse poterit, animo nunquam erit.

### 77. *A High-spirited Indian King.*

The passage of Alexander the Great over the Hydaspes, one of the great rivers of India, was disputed by Porus, an Indian king. His courage and spirit won the admiration of Alexander, who continued him as ruler of his people and extended his sway.

Rex spoliari corpus Pori, interemptum esse credens, iubet et, qui detraherent lorica vestemque, concurrere : cum

6. grandis (often with *natu* or *aevu*), *advanced in years*.

7. clientelae, -arum, *dependents*.

8. intentus : partic. of *intendere* = adj., *on the stretch (tanquam arcum)*, i.e., *eager, alert*. — arcus, -us, *bow*.

14. emancipare, *to give up, sur-*

*render to*. Transl. Pass. by Middle or Reflexive.

15. senilis, -e : cf. Eng. *senile*.

16. aliquid : sc. est. — probare, *to approve*.

19. Rex : i.e., Alexander. — interimere, or -emere (-imo), -emi, -emptum, *to kill*.

20. lorica, *cuirass*.

belua dominum tueri et spoliantes coepit adpetere levatumque corpus eius rursus dorso suo inponere. Ergo telis undique obruitur confossoque eo in vehiculum Porus inponitur. Quem rex ut vidit adlevantem oculos, non odio, sed  
 5 miseratione commotus, 'Quae,' inquit, 'amentia te coegit, rerum mearum cognita fama, belli fortunam experiri, cum Taxilis esset in deditos clementiae meae tam propinquum tibi exemplum?' At ille, 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'percontaris, respondebo ea libertate, quam interrogando fecisti. Nemi-  
 10 nem me fortiorem esse censebam. Meas enim noveram vires, nondum expertus tuas: fortiorem esse te belli docuit eventus. Sed ne sic quidem parum felix sum, secundus tibi.' Rursus interrogatus, quid ipse victorem statuere debere censeret, 'Quod hic,' inquit, 'dies tibi suadet, quo  
 15 expertus es, quam caduca felicitas esset.'

78. *A Bold Barbarian.*

Ariovistus, the head of a powerful German confederacy, crossed the Rhine to aid the Sequani in their struggle with the Aedui. The Aedui appealed to Caesar for help. He came to the rescue. Ariovistus was defeated (B.C. 58) and driven across the Rhine. Thus was the dangerous German migration arrested.

Et prima contra Germanos illius pugna iustissimis quidem ex causis. Aedui de incursionibus eorum querebantur. Quae erat Ariovisti regis superbia! Cui cum legati dicerent, 'Veni ad Caesarem,' et 'Quis est Caesar?' et 'Si vult,

1. *adpetere*, (here) *to attack*,  
*make for.*

2. *dorsum*, *back.*

7. *Taxilis*: a prince who ruled between the Indus and the Hydaspes. He made terms with Alexander as soon as possible and assisted him in a military way.

8. *percontari*, *to ask.*

12. *eventus*: nom. case.—  
*parum*, *not very, too little.*

13. *statuere*: i.e., as regards himself (Porus).

14. *quo*: sc. *die.*

15. *caducus*, *fleeting, transitory.*

16. *illius*: i.e., Caesar.

19. *et* (before *Quis est C.*) is correlat. with what follows.

veniat,' inquit, et 'Quid ad illum, quid agat nostra Germania? num ego me interpono Romanis?' Itaque tantus gentis novae terror in castris, ut testamenta passim etiam in principiis scriberentur.

79. *The Victor of Plataea dies in Disgrace.*

Pausanias, the Spartan, was commander-in-chief of the Greeks who united to beat back at Plataea in B.C. 479 the host of the Persian king, led by Mardonius. This and subsequent success turned the head of Pausanias. He actually entered into treasonable negotiations with the Persians, after having been once tried and acquitted of high treason. The bearer (Argilius) of a letter from Pausanias to a Persian satrap, having opened the letter and read therein instructions that the bearer was to be put to death, carried it to the Spartan magistrates (ephor). The rest may be read in our selection.

Pausanias, ut audivit Argilium confugisse in aram, per-  
turbatus venit eo. Quem cum supplicem dei videret in ara  
sedentem, quaerit, causae quid sit tam repentini consilii.  
Huic ille, quid ex litteris comperisset, aperit. Modo magis  
Pausanias perturbatus orare coepit, ne enuntiaret nec se  
meritum de illo optime proderet: quod si eam veniam sibi  
dedisset tantisque implicatum rebus sublevasset, magno ei  
praemio futurum.

3. in castris: i.e., of the Romans.

4. principia, -orum, *chief* or *officers' quarters* (in the centre of the camp).

5. ut means what with the indic.

6. eo: part of speech?—quem: refers to whom? and why?

7. causae depends on quid.

8. modo, *only*. Modifies what?

9. enuntiare: NOT *enuntiate*. How (in translating) treat the prepos. in compound verbs?

10. optime does not modify proderet.—quod si, *but if*.

11. implicare: infer from English, or from in + plicare.

12. futurum sc. esse: orat. obliq. depending on verb implied in orare coepit.

His rebus ephori cognitis satius putarunt in urbe eum comprehendi. Quo cum essent profecti et Pausanias placato Argilio, ut putabat, Lacedaemonem reverteretur, in itinere, cum iam in eo esset ut comprehenderetur, ex vultu  
 5 cuiusdam ephori, qui eum admoneri cupiebat, insidias sibi fieri intellexit. Itaque paucis ante gradibus. quam qui eum sequebantur, in aedem Minervae, quae Chalcioicos vocatur, confugit. Hinc ne exire posset, statim ephori valvas eius aedis obstruxerunt tectumque sunt demoliti, quo celerius  
 10 sub divo interiret. Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse eamque iam magno natu, postquam de scelere filii comperit, in primis ad filium claudendum lapidem ad introitum aedis attulisse. Sic Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculavit. Hic cum semianimis de  
 15 templo elatus esset, confestim animam efflavit. Cuius mortui corpus cum eodem nonnulli dicerent inferri oportere,

1. ephorus, -i : one of the five ephori, — magistrates elected annually at Sparta. — satius, *easier, or better.*

2. quo : adv. referring to what (already mentioned) ?

3. placare, *to reconcile.* Cf. Engl. word *placate.* — Lacedaemon, *Sparta*, capital city of Laconia.

4. cum iam . . . comprehenderetur, *when he was on the point of being arrested.*

6. ante . . . quam : how translate, when ante is separated from quam in the text? — paucis . . . gradibus : abl. degree of difference.

7. Chalcioicos, -i : an epithet of Minerva, from her temple of brass (*χαλκός, brass*).

8. valvae, -arum, *folding-door*, i.e., making an imposing entrance to public buildings.

9. demoliri : infer meaning from analysis (notice the force of the preposition) and from English. — quo = ut eo.

10. sub divo, i.e., sub Iove : rather than in the roofed temple, which would be polluted by his death. — interiret : i.e., by starvation.

11. magno natu, *of great age.* Cf. grandis natu.

13. introitus, -us : intro + ire.

14. semianimis, -e : infer meaning from semi + anima.

16. cum, *notwithstanding that.* — eodem . . . quo (I, p. 103) : used adverbially. — inferri : i.e., for burial ; depends on oportere.

quo ii, qui ad supplicium essent dati, displicuit pluribus, et procul ab eo loco infoderunt, quo erat mortuus.

80. *How Zopyrus recaptured Babylon for Dareus.*

Interiecto deinde tempore cum Assyrii descivissent et Babyloniam occupassent, difficilisque urbis expugnationis esset, aestuante rege unus de interfectoribus magorum, Zopyrus, 5 domi se verberibus lacerari toto corpore iubet, nasum, aures et labia sibi praecidi, atque ita regi inopinanti se offert. Attonitum et quaerentem Dareum causas auctoremque tam foedae lacerationis tacitus, quo proposito fecerit, edocet, formaque in futura consilio transfugae titulo Babyloniam 10 proficiscitur. Ibi ostendit populo laniatum corpus, queritur crudelitatem regis, a quo in regni petitione non virtute, sed auspicio, non iudicio hominum, sed hinnitu equi superatus sit; iubet illos ex amicis exemplum capere, quid hostibus cavendum sit; hortatur, non moenibus magis quam armis 15 confidant, patianturque se commune bellum recentiore ira gerere. Nota nobilitas viri pariter et virtus omnibus erat,

1. displicere (-pliceo), -ui, -itum, to displease. cut off. — inopinans, not expecting.

3. interiecto . . . tempore: i.e., later. — Assyrii: nom. plur. — desciscere (-scisco), -scivi, -itum, to revolt.

4. Babylon: district of which Babylon was the capital city.

5. aestuare, to rage. — interfector, -oris: infer from the supine stem of interficere. — magus, -i, Persian Magician or Wise Man.

6. nasus, nose.

7. labium: here = same meaning as labrum. — praecidere, to

9. propositum, -i: not "proposition"; infer from pro + ponere.

10. titulus, guise.

13. auspiciū, omen, sign. — hinnitus, neighing.

14. quid hostibus . . . sit, how they should be on their guard, i.e., the king, lest the same should happen to them.

16. commune: i.e., with him.

17. nota is predicate. — pariter et, equally well as. Observe that et = ac.



nec de fide timebant, cuius, veluti pignora, vulnera corporis et iniuriæ notas habebant. Constituitur ergo dux omnium suffragio, et accepta parva manu semel atque iterum cedentibus consulto Persis secunda proelia facit. Ac postremo  
 5 universum sibi creditum exercitum Dareo prodit urbemque ipsam in potestatem eius redigit.

### 81. *A Roman Oath.*

L. Manlius Imperiosus was dictator in B.C. 363. He was prosecuted the next year by M. Pomponius, because he had sought to extend his tenure of office beyond the legal period of six months.

L. Manlio, A. f., cum dictator fuisset, M. Pomponius, tribunus plebis, diem dixit, quod is paucos sibi dies ad dictaturam gerendam addidisset; criminabatur etiam, quod  
 10 T. filium, qui postea est Torquatus appellatus, ab hominibus relegasset, et ruri habitare iussisset. Quod cum audivisset adulescens filius negotium exhiberi patri, accurrisse Romam, et cum prima luce Pomponii domum venisse dicitur. Cui cum esset nuntiatum, qui illum iratum adlaturum ad se  
 15 aliquid contra patrem arbitraretur, surrexit e lectulo, remotisque arbitris, ad se adulescentem iussit venire. At ille, ut ingressus est, confestim gladium destrinxit, iuravitque illum statim interfecturum, nisi ius iurandum sibi dedisset

1. veluti, *as if*.

2. nota, *mark*.

3. suffragium, *vote*.

7. Manlio: indir. obj. after dixit. — A. f. = Auli filio.

8. diem dicere (legal techn.), *to name a day for trial*; hence = *to give formal notice of impeachment*.

9. dictaturam gerere, *to hold or fill the office of dictator*. — criminari, *to accuse*.

11. relegare, *to banish*.

12. negotium exhibere = *accusare*. Here negotium e. p. is in appos. to quod.

13. cui . . . qui refers to Pomponius; illum to whom?

15. aliquid contra patrem: i.e., some new charge. — surgere (surgo), surrexi, -rectum, *to raise or rise up*. — lectulus, *bed*.

16. arbiter, -tri, *witness*.

se patrem missum esse facturum. Iuravit hoc terrore coactus Pomponius ; rem ad populum detulit ; docuit cur sibi causa desistere necesse esset ; Manlium missum fecit. Tantum temporibus illis ius iurandum valebat.

## 82. *The Blind Timoleon.*

Timoleon, one of the noblest of Greeks, was a Corinthian by birth. His greatest work was the overthrow of the despots of the Greek cities of Sicily, especially of Syracuse, whither he was sent by the unanimous vote of the Corinthian assembly when Syracuse (B.C. 344) asked Corinth for aid. When his work was accomplished he retired to private life, and to his memory the Syracusans erected a splendid monument.

Hic cum aetate iam provectus esset, sine ullo morbo  
lumina oculorum amisit. Quam calamitatem ita moderate  
tulit, ut neque eum querentem quisquam audierit, neque  
eo minus privatis publicisque rebus interfuerit. Veniebat  
autem in theatrum, cum ibi concilium populi haberetur,  
propter valetudinem vectus iumentis iunctis, atque ita de  
vehiculo quae videbantur dicebat. Neque hoc illi quisquam  
tribuebat superbiae : nihil enim umquam neque insolens  
neque gloriosum ex ore eius exiit. Qui quidem, cum suas  
laudes audiret praedicari, numquam aliud dixit quam se in  
ea re maxime diis agere gratias atque habere, quod, cum

1. se patrem missum esse facturum, *that he would cease the prosecution against his father.*

2. rem deferre, *to refer.* — causa, *case, trial.*

5. Hic : i.e., Timoleon. — morbus, *disease.*

7. querentem : NOT from quærere.

11. vehiculum : infer from suffix

and vehere, or from English derivative. — quae videbantur, *whatever seemed good to him.* — illi

. . . superbiae : double dative.

13. gloriosus, (here) *boastful.* Also *famous, glorious* (gloria + suffix osus).

15. gratias agere, *to return thanks ; gratias* (or gratiam) *habere, to feel grateful.*

Siciliam recreare constituissent, tum se potissimum ducem esse voluissent — nihil enim rerum humanarum sine deorum numine geri putabat. Itaque suae domi sacellum Automantias constituerat idque sanctissime colebat.

### 83. *A Brave and Patriotic Soldier.*

Chabrias was a well-known Athenian general who achieved many successes. He finally, owing to charges brought against him and the consequent unpopularity, entered the military service of the king of Egypt. He, however, fought on the side of his native city in the Social War, where he commanded the fleet. Nepos is wrong in saying that he served in a private capacity (*privatus*). He met his end at the siege of Chios in B.C. 357.

- 5 Chabrias autem periit bello sociali tali modo. Opugnabant Athenienses Chium. Erat in classe Chabrias privatus, sed omnes, qui in magistratu erant, auctoritate anteibat, eumque magis milites quam qui praeerant aspici-
- 10 studet portum intrare gubernatoremque iubet eo derigere navem, ipse sibi perniciiei fuit: cum enim eo penetrasset, ceterae non sunt secutae. Quo facto circumfusus hostium concursu cum fortissime pugnaret, navis rostro percussa coepit sidere. Hinc refugere cum posset, si se in mare
- 15 deiecisset, quod suberat classis Atheniensium, quae exciperet natantes, perire maluit quam, armis abiectis, navem relinquere, in qua fuerat vectus. Id ceteri facere noluerunt,

1. *recreare*: the force of the inseparable prefixes (here *re-*) is an essential part of the meaning of the compound. — *potissimum*, especially.

3. *sacellum*, chapel. — *Automantia*, (-as or -ae): goddess of fortune.

7. *magistratu* = imperio.

10. *derigere* (-rigo), to steer.

12. *ceterae*: sc. *naves*.

14. *sidere* (*sido*), to settle, sink.

15. *quod*: causal.

16. *natare*, to swim, float.

qui nando in tutum pervenerunt. At ille, praestare honestam mortem existimans turpi vitae, comminus pugnans telis hostium interfectus est.

#### 84. *The Annihilation of the Teutoni.*

About 100 years B.C. the subjugation of Italy by the Cimbri and Teutoni seemed imminent. Successive Roman armies had been defeated, when C. Marius, who had won military distinction in Spain and Africa, assumed command. In B.C. 102 the Teutoni were annihilated by Marius near Aquae Sextiae (a little north of Massilia) in Gaul. In the following year the same fate overtook the Cimbric host at the Raudii Campi, near Vercellae, west of Mediolanum.

Cimbri et Teutoni ab extremis Germaniae profugi, cum terras eorum inundasset Oceanus, novas sedes toto orbe quaerebant, exclusque et Gallia et Hispania cum in Italiam demigrarent, misere legatos in castra Silani, inde ad senatum, petentes, ut populus Martius aliquid sibi terrae daret. Sed quas daret terras populus Romanus, agrariis legibus inter se dimicaturus? Repulsi igitur, quod nequiverant precibus, armis petere coeperunt. Sed nec primum impetum barbarorum Silanus, nec secundum Manilius, nec tertium Caepio sustinere potuerunt: omnes fugati, exuti castris. Actum erat, nisi Marius illi saeculo contigisset. Ille quoque non ausus congregi statim militem tenuit in castris, donec invicta illa rabies et impetus, quem pro

1. in tutum: adv.; sc. locum.  
2. comminus, at close quarters (con + manus).

4. ab extremis: sc. finibus.—  
profugus, wanderer.

5. orbe: sc. terrarum.

7. misere for miserunt.—M.  
Junius Silanus: consul B.C. 109.

8. Martius = Romanus.

13. fugare, not fugere.—exuere (-uo), -ui, -utum, to despoil (with abl. of thing taken).

14. actum est de... (idiom), it is all up with. Sc. de re publica here.—saeculum, age, generation.—contingere (-tingo), -tigi, -tactum, to happen.

15. militem = milites.

virtute barbari habent, consenesceret. Recessere igitur increpantes et (tanta erat capiendae urbis fiducia) consulentes, si quid Romani ad uxores suas mandarent. Nec segnius, quam minati fuerant, tripartito agmine in Alpes, id  
 5 est claustra Italiae, ferebantur. Marius, mira statim velocitate occupatis compendiis, praevenit hostem, prioresque Teutonos sub ipsis Alpium radicibus adsecutus in loco quem Aquas Sextias vocant, quo proelio oppressit. Vallem fluviumque medium hostes tenebant, et nostris aquarum  
 10 nulla erat copia. Flagitante aquam exercitu, Marius, 'Si viri estis,' inquit, 'en, illic habetis.' Itaque tanto ardore pugnatum est eaque caedes hostium fuit, ut victor Romanus cruento flumine non plus aquae biberit quam sanguinis barbarorum. Rex ipse Teutobodus, quaternos senosque equos  
 15 transilire solitus, vix unum, cum fugeret, ascendit, proximoque in saltu comprehensus insigne spectaculum triumphi fuit, quippe vir proceritatis eximiae super sua tropaea eminebat.

### 85. *A Military Genius.*

Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. Si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes gentes

1. *consenescere, to decline (lit. to become aged).* — *recessere* for *recesserunt*. Marius, after the Teutoni had for three days unsuccessfully assailed his camp, allowed them for six days to march past on their way to Italy.

2. *increpare, to exclaim loudly against, upbraid.* — *consulentes = quaerentes* (of course, in ridicule).

3. *mandare, to send word to a person.*

4. *in Alpes, towards the Alps.*

5. *claustrum, barrier.* — *ferre* in pass. (reflex.) = *to hurry*.

6. *compendium, short-cut, shorter route.*

11. *en, lo! see!*

12. *fuit = facta est.*

14. *quaterni, -ae, -a* (and *seni, -ae, -a*), *four* (and *six*) *at a time*.

16. *saltus, forest-pasture; defile.*

17. *quippe = quia.* — *proceritas, height, stature.* — *tropaeum, trophy* (object taken from the enemy and carried in the triumphus).

18. *Hamilcar, -aris.*

19. *ut:* the accus. with infin. is common after *verum est*.

virtute superarit, non est infitiandum Hannibalem tanto praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto populus Romanus antecedit fortitudine cunctas nationes. Nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior.

5

Hac igitur, qua diximus, aetate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est, cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatore suffectus, equitatu omni praefuit. Hoc quoque interfecto, exercitus summam imperii ad eum detulit. Id Karthaginem delatum publice comprobatum est. Sic Hannibal, minor 10 quinque et viginti annis natus, imperator factus proximo triennio omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit: Saguntum vi expugnavit, tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit. Saltum 15 Pyrenaeum transiit. Quaecumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit; neminem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpes

1. infitiari, *to deny*. — tanto . . . quanto.

2. praestare (-sto), -stiti, -atum, or -itum.

4. quotienscumque, *as often as*. — congressus est . . . discessit: In the absence of an expressed subject, to what do we look?

6. diximus: sc. Hannibalem in Hispaniam profectum esse (i.e., from Carthage). — aetate: about Hannibal's ninth year.

7. obitus, -us, *death*. — Hasdrubal (-alis) was son-in-law of Hamilcar.

8. sufficere, *to choose in place of*.

9. Id: his choice as commander-in-chief.

10. minor . . . natus, *less than . . . years old*. natus: partic. from nasci, *to be born*.

12. subigere (-igo), -egi, -actum. — Saguntum was a Spanish city (near the Mediterranean coast) in league with Rome. Its capture by H. in B.C. 219, after a protracted and desperate siege, was intended to precipitate the Second Punic War.

13. comparare, *to equip* — a different verb from comparare, *to compare*.

15. saltum Pyr. = montes Pyrenaeos.

16. Quaecumque, *wherever*.

17. incola, *inhabitant*.

posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo unquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpico conantes prohibere transitu concidit, loca  
 5 patefecit, itinera muniit, effecit ut ea elephantus ornatus ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. Hac copias traduxit, in Italiamque pervenit. Per Ligures Appenninum transiit, petens Etruriam. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adficitur oculorum, ut postea nunquam dextro  
 10 aequae bene usus sit. Qua valetudine cum etiamtum premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. Hinc in Apuliam pervenit. Ibi  
 15 obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paullum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

1. seiungunt: force of prefix se-?

3. Graius, *Greek* (perhaps a Celtic word). — saltus Graius: i.e., Alpes Graiae.

4. Alpici, -orum, *Alpine mountaineers*.

5. iter (or viam) munire, *to make or repair a road*. — ea: sc. via. — ornare, *to equip* (sometimes = *to adorn*).

6. repere, *to creep, crawl*.

7. Ligures, *the Ligurians* (near the modern Genoa).

8. Appenninus, -i, *the Apennine mountain-chain*.

9. adficere, *to attack* (as a disease).

11. apud Trasumennum: in 217 the Romans under C. Flaminus suffered a great defeat at Lake Trasimene.

14. in Apuliam: Hannibal wintered in Apulia in 217.

15. C. Terentius Varro and L. Aemilius Paullus. The two generals commanded on alternate days, and Varro, who was hot-headed and a poor soldier compared with Paullus, was in command on the day when the battle of Cannae occurred (B.C. 216) — a Roman defeat unspeakably dreadful and which won over all southern Italy to the standard of Hannibal.

Hac pugna pugnata, Romam profectus est, nullo resistente.

86. *Cyrus the Great succumbs to a Woman.*

Cyrus, surnamed the Great, was believed to be the founder of the Persian Empire. His early history was mythical and legendary even to the Persians of Herodotus' time. After conquering Media, Croesus of Lydia (subacta Asia in line 3), the Greek cities of Ionia, and the farther East (Parthia, Babylonia, etc.), according to our story he met his end (in B.C. 538) fighting the Scythae (-arum). A very different account of his death was also current in antiquity.

Cyrus, subacta Asia et universo Oriente in potestatem redactō Scythis bellum infert. Erat eo tempore regina Scytharum Tamyris, quae non muliebriter adventu hostium 5 territa, cum prohibere eos transitu Oaxis fluminis posset, transire permisit, et sibi faciliorem pugnam intra regni sui terminos rata et hostibus obiectu fluminis fugam difficiliorem. Itaque Cyrus traiectis copiis, cum aliquantisper in Scythiam processisset, castra metatus est. Dein postera die simulato 10 metu, quasi refugiens castra deseruisset, ita vini adfatim et ea, quae epulis erant necessaria, reliquit. Quod cum nuntiatum reginae esset, adulescentulum filium ad insequendum eum cum tertia parte copiarum mittit. Cum ventum ad castra Cyri esset, ignarus rei militaris adulescens, veluti 15 ad epulas, non ad proelium venisset, omissis hostibus insuetos barbaros vino se onerare patitur, priusque Scythae

1. Romam profectus est: H. did not lay siege to Rome.

5. muliebriter: suffix? part of speech and meaning?

8. reri (reor), ratus sum, to believe, think.

9. aliquantisper, for a little while.

10. metari, to pitch one's camp, lit. to measure off (the camp-space).

11. adfatim, enough, abundantly (often with partit. genit.).

15. ignarus, ignorant of, unskilled in (in + gnarus, knowing).

17. insuetus, unaccustomed to (in + suescere). — prius . . . quam: how is prius (or ante) to be managed in translation, when separated, as here, from the quam?



ebrietate quam bello vincuntur. Nam cognitis his Cyrus reversus per noctem saucios opprimit omnesque Scythas cum reginae filio interficit. Amissa tanto exercitu et, quod gravius dolendum, unico filio, Tamyris orbitatis dolorem  
 5 non in lacrimas effudit, sed in ultionis solacia intendit, hostesque recenti victoria exsultantes pari insidiarum fraude circumvenit. Quippe simulata diffidentia propter vulnus acceptum refugiens Cyrum ad angustias usque perduxit. Ibi compositis in montibus insidiis ducenta milia Persarum  
 10 cum ipso rege trucidavit. In qua victoria etiam illud memorabile fuit, quod ne nuntius quidem tantae cladis superfuit. Caput Cyri amputatum in utrem humano sanguine repletum conici regina iubet cum hac exprobratione crudelitatis: 'Satia te,' inquit, 'sanguine, quem sitisti  
 15 cuiusque insatiabilis semper fuisti.'

87. *The Hero of Marathon perishes in the State-prison.*

The fall of Miltiades affords one of the many illustrations of private animosity triumphing over patriotism, and thus blasting reputation and prospects. After Marathon, a fleet was voted Miltiades to follow up Grecian success against the Persians. Instead of doing so, he used it in a private attack on the island of Paros (also spelled Parus, -ii). He failed, returning after twenty-six days (*Athenas . . . rediret*), wounded in the thigh.

Quo factum est ut Miltiades, timens ne classis regia adventaret, incensis operibus, quae statuerat, cum totidem

2. saucius, (here) *drunken*, lit. *hurt*.

4. orbitas: infer from orbus, *bereaved, deprived of*.

5. intendere: do not be misled by Eng. derivatives of Latin verbs.

9. componere: see last note.

12. uter, -tris is masc.

13. exprobratio, *reproach*.

14. satiare (-io): infer meaning of verb from satis. — quem refers to sanguine (masc.). — Verbs of 'taste,' 'smell,' etc., take acc. (A. and G. 237, c.; G. 329, R. 1; H. 371, III.).

15. cuiusque is not from quisque, but is the relative + que.

16. classis regia: i.e., of the Persian king.

navibus, atque erat profectus, Athenas magna cum offensione civium suorum rediret. Accusatus ergo est proditiōis, quod, cum Parum expugnare posset, a rege corruptus infectis rebus discessisset. Eo tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppugnando oppido acceperat. Itaque cum ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater eius Stesagoras. Causa cognita, capitis absolutus pecunia multatus est, eaque lis quinquaginta talentis aestimata est, quantus in classem sumptus factus erat. Hanc pecuniam quod solvere in praesentia non poterat, in vincula publica coniectus est ibique diem obiit supremum.

### 88. *The Fate of the Cimbri.*

Read the historical note to No. 84.

Sublatis funditus Teutonis in Cimbros convertitur. Hi iam per hiemem Tridentinis iugis in Italiam descenderant. Athesis flumen non ponte nec navibus, sed quadam stoliditate barbarica primum corporibus adgressi, postquam retinere amnem manibus et clipeis frustra temptaverant, ingesta

1. *offensio, displeasure.*

2. *proditio, treason.*

4. *rebus*: i.e., for which the fleet had been given him. Cf. idiom *re infecta, without success* (in, *not*, + *facere*).

6. *dicere*: sc. *causam* (leg. "case").

7. *capitis absolvere, to acquit of a capital charge.* Cf. *capitis damnatus, sentenced to death.*

8. *lis, litis, (fem.) damages.* — *talentum*: an Attic talent = perhaps \$1,200.

9. *sumptus* is substantive.

10. *solvere, to pay.* — in *vincula*

*conicere, or ducere, to cast into prison.*

11. *diem supremum obire, to die, lit. to come to the last day.*

12. *funditus, utterly.* — *convertitur*: reflex., or "middle" in force. Sc. *Marius*.

13. *Tridentinis*: adj.; *Tridentum*, on the river Athesis, was the capital town of the *Tridentini*, an Alpine tribe. — *iugum, mountain-pass.*

14. *stoliditas*: infer from suffix and primitive. Cf. Eng. derivative.

16. *clipeus, round shield.* (The scutum was oblong.)

silva obrutum transiluere. Si statim infesto agmine urbem petissent, grande discrimen; sed in Venetia, quo fere tractu Italia mollissima est, ipsa soli caelique clementia robur elanguit. Ad hoc panis usu carnisque coctae et vini  
 5 dulcedine mitigatos Marius in tempore adgressus est. Venere ipsi et diem pugnae a nostro imperatore petierunt, et sic proximum dedit. In patentissimo, quem Raudium vocant, campo concurrere. Inde milia sexaginta quinque cecidere, hinc trecentis minus. Per omnem diem conciditur  
 10 barbarus. Istic quoque imperator addiderat virtuti dolum, secutus Hannibalem artemque Cannarum. Primum nebulosum diem nactus, ut hosti inopinatus occurreret, tum ventosum quoque, ut pulvis in oculos et ora ferretur, tum acie in orientem conversa, ut, quod ex captivis mox cognitum  
 15 est, ex splendore galearum aere repercusso quasi ardere caelum videretur. Nec minor cum uxoribus eorum pugna quam cum ipsis fuit, cum obiectis undique<sup>e</sup> plaustris atque carpentis altae desuper securibus contisque pugnarent. Perinde speciosa mors earum fuit quam pugna. Nam cum  
 20 missa ad Marium legatione libertatem non impetrassent,

1. obruere (-ruo), -ui, -utum, *to cover over*. — transiluere = transierunt. Transilire = *lit. to spring across*.

2. discrimen: *sc. fuisset*. — fere, *as a rule*.

3. solum, *soil*. — clementia *is abl. c.*

4. elanguescere (-esco), -langui, *to become relaxed*. — panis, -is, *bread*.

5. mitigare, *to effeminate*, *lit. to make mild (mitis)*. — in tempore, *at the right time*.

6. venire = venerunt. Also concurrere (8), cecidere (9), and

concidere (1, p. 115) are perfects.

8. inde: *transl. on the side of the Cimbri*. Notice that hinc is contrasted with inde.

9. conciditur barbarus: *sing. for plur.*

14. acie . . . conversa = aciem . . . convertit.

18. carpentum: *a two-wheeled vehicle*. — desuper, *from above (the enemy)*. — securis, *axe*. — contus, *pole*.

19. perinde, *equally*. — speciosus: *infer meaning from species, -ei, outward show, splendor*.

suffocatis elisque infantibus suis aut mutuis concidere vulneribus aut vinculo e crinibus suis facto ab arboribus iugisque plaustorum pependerunt.

### 89. *An Honest Patriot.*

Themistocles was undoubtedly one of the shrewdest statesmen that Athens ever produced. It is said that his schoolmaster foretold of him that, whether good or bad, he would be great. Although not so honest as his great rival Aristides, he was more powerful. To Themistocles more than to any one man was due the victory over the Persians (*Persae, -arum*) at "immortal Salamis." He died an exile from Athens in the land of his enemy, the "Great King."

Themistocles post victoriam eius belli, quod cum Persis fuit, dixit in contione, se habere consilium rei publicae salutare, sed id sciri non opus esse; postulavit, ut aliquem populus daret, quicum communicaret. Datus est Aristides. Huic ille classem Lacedaemoniorum, quae subducta esset ad Gytheum, clam incendi posse; quo facto frangi Lacedaemoniorum opes necesse esset. Quod Aristides cum audisset, in contionem magna expectatione venit dixitque perutile esse consilium, quod Themistocles adferret, sed minime honestum. Itaque Athenienses, quod honestum non esset,

1. elidere (-lido), -si, -sum, *to crush, strangle* (lit. *knock out*).

2. crinis, *hair*.

3. pependerunt = se suspenderunt.

5. contio, *public assembly; speech*. Contracted form of *contio*.

6. salutaris: *adj.*

8. Huic ille: to whom do these words respectively refer? Sc. "verb of saying" with ille.

9. Gytheum, -i: Spartan naval station southwest of the mouth of the river Eurotas.

10. quod . . . cum: which is the subordinate connective?

11. perutilis, -e: force of the prefix *per*?

13. quod . . . esset: relative clause preceding the antecedent (*id . . . utile*). What force has *ne . . . quidem* upon the word between?

id ne utile quidem putaverunt, totamque eam rem, quam ne audierant quidem, auctore Aristide repudiaverunt.

90. *The African Desert.*

Ac primo quidem et sequente die tolerabilis labor visus  
nondum tam vastis nudisque solitudinibus aditis, iam tamen  
5 sterili et emoriente terra. Sed ut aperuere se campi alto  
obruiti sabulo, haud secus quam profundum aequor ingressi  
terram oculis requirebant. Nulla arbor, nullum culti soli  
occorrebat vestigium. Aqua etiam defecerat, quam utribus  
cameli vexerant, et in arido solo ac fervido sabulo nulla  
10 erat. Ad hoc sol omnia incenderat siccaque et adusta  
erant ora, cum repente — sive illud deorum munus sive  
casus fuit — obductae caelo nubes condidere solem, ingens  
aestu fatigatis, etiamsi aqua deficeret, auxilium. Enimvero  
ut largum quoque imbrem excusserunt procellae, pro se  
15 quisque excipere eum, quidam ob sitim impotentes sui ore  
quoque hianti captare coeperunt. Quadriduum per vastas  
solitudines absumptum est.

91. *The First Farmer.*

Primus aratra manu sollerti fecit Osiris  
et teneram ferro sollicitavit humum ;

2. auctore Aristide, *on the advice (or word) of A.* ; lit. *A. being their voucher, or authority.*

5. emori (emorigor).

6. sabulum, *coarse sand.* — haud secus, *not otherwise.*

7. requirebant : sc. milites.

9. camelus, *camel.*

10. siccus, *dry.* — adustus, *sun-burnt.*

12. condere (condo), -didi, -ditum, *to hide.*

13. fatigare, *to tire out.* — enimvero, *as might be expected.*

14. procella, *storm.*

15. sitis, -is. — impotentes, *having no control over themselves (sui, genit.).*

16. hiare, *to gape.*

18. aratrum : *infer meaning from arare, to plough.* — Osiris : *one of the greatest of Egyptian divinities.*

primus inexpertae commisit semina terrae,  
 pomaque non notis legit ab arboribus.  
 Hic docuit teneram palis adiungere vitem,  
 hic viridem dura caedere falce comam;  
 illi iucundos primum matura sapes  
 expressa incultis uva dedit pedibus.

5

92. *Alexander 'Unties' the Gordian Knot.*

There was a tradition that connected Gordium, a town of Bithynia, with Gordius, spoken of as the father of Midas. Gordius was chosen king by the people, because an oracle of Juppiter bade them choose him who first entered the market-place in a vehicle. This vehicle was ever afterwards an object of especial veneration in the temple of Juppiter, where it was kept. A later oracle prophesied that he should conquer all Asia who should untie the peculiar *nexus* of the chariot's yoke.

Alexander urbe in dicionem suam redacta Iovis templum intrat. Vehiculū, quo Gordium, Midas patrem, vectum esse constabat, aspexit, cultu haud sane a vilioribus vulgaris-  
 que usu abhorrens. Notabile erat iugum adstrictum <sup>10</sup>  
 compluribus nodis in semetipsos implicatis et celantibus  
 nexus Incolis deinde adfirmantibus, editam esse oraculo  
 sortem, Asiae potiturum, qui inexplicabile vinculum solvisset,

1. semen, -inis, seed.

2. pomum, fruit.

3. Hic: i.e., Osiris. — pālus, stake, prop. (pālus, -udis =

young. —  
 age. (Literally = hair.)  
 matura agrees with uva in  
 next line. — sapor, relish, flavor.

6. incultus, rough. — pedibus: cf. Eng. "tread the wine-press."

7. urbe: i.e., Gordium.

9. constat, it is evident. — cultus, (here) outward appearance, decoration. — haud sane, not at all. — vilis, cheap, mean.

10. abhorrere, to be unsuitable for, to be inconsistent with (with abl.). The chariot was a common-looking thing.

12. nexus, -us, joining, interlacing.

13. sors, (here) the response of an oracle (oraculum). — potiturum: what is subject?

est vis, quam quos in Africa domitant, et viribus magnitudo  
 respondet. Aurum flumina vehunt, quae leni modicoque  
 lapsu segnes aquas ducunt. Gemmas margaritasque mare  
 litoribus infundit. Ingenia hominum, sicut ubique, apud  
 5 illos locorum quoque situs format. Corpora usque pedes  
 carbaso velant, soleis pedes, capita linteis vinciunt, lapilli ex  
 auribus pendent, bracchia quoque et lacertos auro colunt,  
 quibus inter populares aut nobilitas aut opes eminent.  
 Capillum pectunt saepius, quam tondent, mentum semper  
 10 intonsum est, reliquam oris cutem ad speciem levitatis  
 exaequant. Ad interiora Indiae processit. Silvae erant  
 prope in immensum spatium diffusae procerisque et in  
 eximiam altitudinem editis arboribus umbrosae. Flerique  
 rami instar ingentium stipitum flexi in humum rursus, qua  
 15 se curvaverant, erigebantur, adeo ut species esset non rami  
 resurgentis, sed arboris ex sua radice generatae. Caeli  
 temperies salubris, quippe et vim solis umbrae levant et  
 aquae large manant e fontibus. Ceterum hic quoque  
 serpentium magna vis erat squamis fulgorem auri reddend-  
 20 tibus. Virus haud ullum magis noxium est : quippe morsum  
 praesens mors sequebatur, donec ab incolis remedium  
 oblatum est. Hinc per deserta ventum est ad flumen

1. domitare, *to tame, break in.*

3. margarita, *pearl.*

5. usque, *as far as.*

6. carbasus, *fine linen.*—solea,  
*sandal.*—lintheum, *linen cloth.*—  
 lapillus: infer meaning from lapis  
 and suffix.

9. mentum, *chin.*

10. lēvitas, -atis, *smoothness.*  
 (lēvitas = *lightness.*)

12. diffusus, *spread out.*—  
 procerus, *tall.* *W*

*clitic goes in.* ..nat does the  
 connect? What the et?  
*differ*

14. instar, *after the manner of,*  
*like to* (almost = prepos. govern-  
 ing the genit.).—stipes, -itis,  
*trunk of a tree.*

15. erigere, *to lift up.* The  
 famous banyan-tree is here de-  
 scribed.

17. temperies, -ei, *temperature.*  
 —levare, *to mitigate, relieve.*

18. manare, *to trickle.*

19. squama, *scale* (of fish or  
 serpent).—fulgor, *brightness* (lit.  
*lightning-flash*).

Hyarotim. Iunctum erat flumini nemus, opacum arboribus  
alibi invisitatis agrestiumque pavonum multitudine frequens.

95. *The Useful before the Beautiful.*

Ad fontem cervus, cum bibisset, restitit,  
et in liquore vidit effigiem suam.

Ibi dum ramosa mirans laudat cornua,  
crurumque nimiam tenuitatem vituperat,  
venantum subito vocibus conterritus,  
per campum fugere coepit, et cursu levi  
canes elusit. Silva tum excepit ferum,

in qua retentis impeditus cornibus,  
lacerari coepit morsibus saevis canum.

Tunc moriens vocem hanc edidisse dicitur :

'O me infelicem ! qui nunc demum intelligo,  
utilia mihi quam fuerint, quae despexeram,  
et, quae laudaram, quantum luctus habuerint.'

96. *From a Throne to the Gutter.*

Dionysius the Younger, was the son of the elder "tyrant" of the  
same name. He succeeded his father in power as "tyrant" at Syra-  
cusae (-arum) B.C. 367.

Interea Dionysius Syracusis receptis, cum gravior crude-  
liorque in dies civitati esset, iterata conspiratione obsidetur.

2. *invisitatus*, *strange*, *un-  
known*.

3. *cervus*, *stag.* — *resistere* :  
rather than *restare*.

4. *liquor* = *aqua*. — *effigies*,  
-ei, *image*. (Cf. Eng. *effigy*.)

6. *nimius*, *too great, excessive*.

7. *venantum* : *part.* = *subst.*  
(in *genit. pl.*) ; from *venari*.

10. *retentis* : from *retinēre*.  
Transl. literally.

14. *quam* : modifies *utilia*. —

*quae* : remember that the anteced-  
ent word is often omitted in Latin.

15. *quantum luctus* : *object*  
of verb ; *luctus*, -us, *distress*,  
(source of) *grief*.

16. *receptis* : Dionysius, having  
been driven out of Syracuse, fled  
to Locri. Some years later he estab-  
lished himself again at Syracuse  
(*Dionysius Syracusis receptis*).

17. *in dies*, *from day to day*. —  
*iterare*, *to renew*.



Tunc, deposito imperio, arcem Syracusanis cum exercitu tradidit receptoque privato instrumento Corinthum in exsilium proficiscitur. Ibi humillima quaeque tutissima existimans in sordidissimum vitae genus descendit : non  
 5 contentus in publico vagari, sed potare ; nec conspici in popinis, sed totis diebus desiderare ; cum perditissimo quoque de minimis rebus disceptare ; pannosus et squalidus incedere : risum libentius praebere quam captare ; in macello perstare ; quod emere non poterat, oculis devorare ; om-  
 10 niaque ista facere, ut contemnendus magis quam metuendus videretur.

97. *The True Home of the Soul.*

Quid enim habet vita commodi ? quid non potius laboris ? Sed habeat sane ; habet certe tamen aut satietatem aut modum. Non lubet enim mihi deplorare vitam, quod  
 15 multi, et ii docti, saepe fecerunt ; neque me vixisse poenitet, quoniam ita vixi, ut non frustra me natum existimem, et ex vita ita discedo, tanquam ex hospitio, non tanquam ex

1. *arcem* . . . *tradidit* : i.e., to Timoleon, on condition that he (Diony.) be guaranteed a safe departure to Corinth. He was at this time besieged in the *arx* on the island.

2. *instrumentum* : lit. *instrument* ; (here) his *material, apparel, "goods and chattels,"* etc.

3. *tutissima* : pred. accus. after infin. sc., of which infin. *quaeque humillima* is subject.

4. *sordidus*, *low, mean.*

5. *potare*, *to tipple, carouse.* — *conspici* : depends on *contentus* understood. So do the infinitives below.

6. *popina*, *cook-shop* (generally of bad repute).

7. *disceptare* : lit. *to pull apart* (*dis* + *captare*), then *to discuss, argue.* — *pannosus* : infer meaning from *pannus, rag.*

8. *risum captare*, *to try to excite a laugh.* — *macellum*, *provision-market.*

12. *commodi* : depends on *quid.*

13. *habeat* : dependent or independent subjunc.—which ? Transl. accordingly. — *sane, indeed.*

16. *natum* : sc. *esse.*

17. *hospitium*, *place of entertainment* (for strangers or guests).

domo. Commorandi enim natura deversorium dedit, non habitandi. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud divinum animorum concilium coetumque proficiscar, cumque ex hac turba et colluvione discedam ! Proficiscar enim non ad eos solum viros, de quibus ante dixi, verum etiam ad Catonem 5 meum, quo nemo vir melior natus est, nemo pietate praestantior ; cuius a me corpus crematum est — quod contra decuit ab illo meum — animus vero non me deserens, sed respectans, in ea profecto loca discessit, quo mihi ipsi cernebat 10 esse veniendum. Quem ego meum casum fortiter ferre visus sum : non quo aequo animo ferrem, sed me ipse consolabar, existimans, non longinquum inter nos digressum et discessum fore.

98. *A Strange Way to fight a Battle.*

After the battle of Zama (B.C. 202), which brought the Second Punic war to an end, Hannibal remained for some years at Carthage, when he was forced to flee. He spent a short time at Tyre, after which he found refuge at the court of Antiochus in Ephesus. After the defeat of Antiochus at Magnesia (B.C. 190), Hannibal again fled, first to Crete, then to the Bithynian king, Prusias. While here he assisted Prusias in his war against Eumenes, king of Pergamum.

Dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et terra : 15

1. deversorium, *inn, lodging-place.*

3. coetus, -us: co + ire.

4. colluvio, *motley rabble* ; turba et colluvione contrasted with divinum animorum concilium.

5. Catonem meum: Marcus, son of M. Porcius Cato (the speaker here) was now dead.

7. quod contra, *whereas on the contrary.*

8. meum: sc. corpus cremari. — animus: i.e., *of my son.*

9. profecto, *assuredly.* — quo = ad quae loca.

11. visus sum: i.e., to most men. — non quo, *not that.* (Explanatory fact: A. and G. 341 d. R.; G. 541, R. 1; H. 516, II., 2.)

12. digressus, -us: di + gredi (-gredior).

14. dissidere (-sideo), *to be at enmity.* — ab eo: i.e., Prusias.

quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi. Sed utrobique Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem: quem si removisset, facilliora sibi cetera fore arbitrabatur. Ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationem. Classe paucis  
 5 diebus erant decreturi. Superabatur navium multitudine: dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis. Imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa fictilia coniici. Harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium,  
 10 classarios convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant se defendere. Id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos. Rex autem in qua nave veheretur, ut scirent, se facturum: quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent, magno  
 15 iis pollicetur praemio fore. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium in scapha cum caduceo mittit. Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum

1. utrobique: i.e., et mari et terra.

2. societas, *alliance*. Eumenes had helped the Romans in their struggle with Antiochus, not only by sending a naval force, but also by taking the field in person.

3. quem (si): notice the gender. Refers to what word?

5. decreturi: transl. *were about to*. From *decernere*, not *decre-scere*.

7. quam plurimas: *the greatest number possible*.

8. fictilis, *earthen, clay-made*.

10. classarius, (sc. miles) *a marine*.

11. a ceteris: sc. navibus; a = *from, against*. — tantum, *only*.

12. illos consecuturos (esse) and se facturum esse (14): indir. disc. after "verb of saying" understood, or implied in *praecipit* (10).

13. ut scirent depends on *facturum esse*.

15. iis . . . praemio: double dat. ("service").

16. Quarum: sc. navium.

18. palam facere, *to make it clear*. — tabellarius, *a letter-carrier*.

19. caduceum or caduceus, *a herald's wand* (stick ornamented with a garland).

pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius, ducis nave declarata suis, eodem, unde erat egressus, se recepit. At Eumenes soluta epistula nihil in ea repperit, 5 nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiebat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. Horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit : quam 10 consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, 15 neque quare id fieret poterat intelligi. Postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent, non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. 20

99. *The Age of Saturn.*

Quam bene Saturno vivebant rege, prius quam tellus in longas est patefacta vias !

Nondum caeruleas pinus contempserat undas,  
effusum ventis prae bueratque sinum ;

4. suis : dat. after declarata.

8. dubitare with infin. (committere) means what? — Bithynii, -orum, the Bithynians.

17. opplere (-pleo), -evi, -etum, to fill.

21. vivebant : sc. homines.

23. caeruleus, dark-colored (blue, azure) ; cf. Eng. cerulean. — pinus, pine-tree ; then anything made of pine : here = what?

24. sinus, -us, curve, fold ; hence, a sail (curved out or filled by the wind).

nec vagus, ignotis repetens compendia terris,  
presserat externa navita merce ratem.

Illo non validus subiit iuga tempore taurus,  
non domito frenos ore momordit equus ;

5 non domus ulla fores habuit ; non fixus in agris,  
qui regeret certis finibus arva, lapis.

Ipsae mella dabant quercus, ultroque ferebant  
obvia securis ubera lactis oves.

10 Non acies, non ira fuit, non bella ; nec ensem  
inmiti saevus duxerat arte faber.

At Iove sub domino caedes et vulnera semper ;  
Nunc mare, nunc leti multa repente via.

100. '*Babylon, the Mighty.*'

Ceterum ipsius urbis pulchritudo ac vetustas non regis  
modo, sed etiam omnium oculos in semet haud innerito  
15 convertit. Semiramis eam condiderat, non, ut plerique  
credidere, Belus, cuius regia ostenditur. Murus instructus

1. compendium, gain.

2. navita : poet. for nauta. —  
merx, -cis (fem.), merchandise. —  
ratis = navis.

4. domare (domo), domui,  
-itum, to break in, subdue. —  
frenum mordere, to champ the  
bit ; mordeo, momordi, morsum,  
to bite.

6. arvum (sc. solum), a field  
(arable : arare), plowed land.

7. quercus, -us, oak-tree. —  
ultro, of one's own accord.

8. securis : adj. = subst. What  
c. after obvius ? — uber, -eris  
(neut.), teat, udder.

9. ensis : poet. for gladius.

10. inmitis (adj.) : in (not) +  
mitis, gentle. — ducere, (here) to  
hammer out, forge (lit. to draw out  
the heated metal). — faber, -bri,  
smith, artisan.

13. Ceterum, but yet. — pul-  
chritudo, -inis : infer meaning  
from suffix and pulcher. — regis  
does not depend on vetustas.

15. Semiramis, -is : see note  
introductory to No. 47.

16. Belus : the so-called founder  
of Babylon. — instruere (-struo),  
-struxi, -structum, to pile up,  
build.

laterculo coctili, bitumine interlitus, spatium xxx et duorum pedum in latitudinem amplectitur : quadrigae inter se occurrentes sine periculo commeare dicuntur. Altitudo muri l cubitorum eminet spatio : turres denis pedibus quam murus altiores sunt. Totius operis ambitus cccclxv stadia 5 complectitur : singulorum stadiorum structuram singulis diebus perfectam esse memoriae proditum est. Aedificia non sunt admota muris, sed fere spatium iugeri unius absunt. Ac ne totam quidem urbem tectis occupaverunt — per lxxx stadia habitabatur — nec omnia continua sunt, 10 credo, quia tutius visum est pluribus locis spargi. Cetera serunt coluntque, ut, si externa vis ingruat, obsessis alimenta ex ipsius urbis solo subministrentur. Euphrates interfluit magnaue molis crepidinibus coercetur. Pons lapideus flumini inpositus iungit urbem. Hic quoque inter mirabilia 15 Orientis opera numeratus est : quippe Euphrates altum limum vehit, quo penitus ad fundamenta iacienda egesto vix sufficiens operi firmo reppererunt solum ; harenae autem subinde cumulatae et saxis, quis pons sustinetur, adnexae morantur amnem, qui retentus acrius, quam si libero cursu 20 mearet, inliditur. Arcem quoque ambitu xx stadia complexam habent. xxx pedes in terram turrium fundamenta

1. laterculus, *small brick*. — coctilis, *baked, burned*. — bitumen, *bitumen, asphalt*. — inter + linere (-lino), -levi, -litum, *to smear over or between*.

2. quadrigae, -arum, *a four-in-hand team of horses*.

4. cubitum, *a cubit (17-20 in.)*.

5. ambitus, -us: *amb + ire*.

6. stadium, *a stadium (about 200 yds.)*.

8. iugerum, *a iugerum (of land: a little less than two-thirds of an Engl. acre)*.

12. serere (sero), sevi, satum, *to sow, plant*. — ingruere (-gruo), -grui, *to assail*. — alimentum: (alere) *infer meaning from suffix*.

14. crepido, *a walled embankment*.

17. limus, *dirt*. — egesto: *agrees with quo*.

19. saxis: *with adnexae*. — quis: *not nom. c.*

21. meare: *to go, move*. — The Greek stadium was 625 Roman or 606 ft. 9 in. Engl. — complexam: *from complectari*.

demissa sunt, ad LXXX summum munimenti fastigium per-  
venit.

101. *How Cranes migrate.*

Immensus est tractus, quo veniunt, si quis reputet a mari  
Eoo. Quando proficiscantur consentiunt, volant ad pros-  
5 ciendum alte : ducem, quem sequantur, eligunt ; in extremo  
agmine per vices, qui acclament, dispositos habent, et  
qui gregem voce contineant. Excubias habent nocturnis  
temporibus, lapillum pede sustinentes, qui laxatus somno et  
decidens indiligentiam coarguat. Ceterae dormiunt capite  
10 subter alam condito, alternis pedibus insistentes. Dux  
erecto providet collo, ac praedicat.

102. *Borrowed Feathers.*

Tumens inani graculus superbia  
pennas, pavoni quae deciderant, sustulit  
seque exornavit. Deinde contemnens suos  
15 se immiscuit pavonum formoso gregi.  
Illi impudenti pennas eripiunt avi  
fugantque rostris. Male mulcatus graculus  
redire maerens coepit ad proprium genus,  
a quo repulsus tristem sustinuit notam.

1. fastigium, *top*. These walls  
were reckoned among the "seven  
wonders of the world."

3. veniunt : sc. grues.

6. per vices, *by turns*.

7. grex, *flock*. — excubiae,  
-arum, *a watch, guard*.

9. indiligentiam : sc. excubi-  
toris (excubitor, i.e., "grus). —  
coarguere, *to expose*.

12. tumēre, *to swell*. — gracu-  
lus, *jackdaw*.

16. eripiunt : case after verbs  
compounded with a or ab, de,  
e or ex ?

17. mulcare, *to maltreat, bruise*.

18. maerēre (-eo), *to be sad,*  
*to lament*. — proprius, *one's own*.

19. nota, *mark of ignominy, a*  
*disgrace*.

Tum quidam ex illis, quos prius despexerat :  
 'contentus nostris si fuisses sedibus  
 et quod natura dederat voluisses pati,  
 nec illam expertus esses contumeliam.'

103. *An Old Bachelor's Defense.*

Epaminondas, the greatest military chieftain of Thebes, apparently never married.

Hic uxorem nunquam duxit. In quo cum reprehendere-  
 tur — quod liberos non relinqueret — a Pelopida, qui filium  
 habebat infamem, maleque eum in eo patriae consulere  
 diceret, 'Vide,' inquit, 'ne tu peius consulas, qui talem ex  
 te natum relicturus sis. Neque vero stirps potest mihi  
 deesse : namque ex me natam relinquo pugnam Leutricam, 10  
 quae non modo mihi superstes, sed etiam immortalis sit  
 necesse est.'

104. *A Recipe for Happiness.*

Vitam quae faciunt beatiorem,  
 Iucundissime Martialis, haec sunt :

2. sedes, -is, abode, condition.

5. Hic : i.e., Epaminondas. — uxorem ducere, to marry a wife, lit. to lead a bride (to the house of the bridegroom). — in quo, in this respect ; because of this.

6. Pelopidas, -ae : a celebrated Theban statesman and general, a true patriot, generous to a fault with his great wealth, and a life-long friend of Epaminondas.

7. infamis, disreputable.

8. diceret : continuation of what clause? What shows it? Pelopidas understood being sub-

ject of diceret, to whom must eum refer? — ne, lest.

9. stirps, -pis, lineage, family, lit. root, stem.

10. nata, daughter : natam is contrasted with natum in line 9. — Leutricus, (adj.) of Leuctra, a town of Boeotia, famous because of the defeat of the Spartans (B.C. 371) by the Thebans under Epaminondas. Pelopidas commanded the Sacred Band in the fight.

14. iucundus, agreeable, amiable. — Martialis here mentioned is Iulius Martialis, a friend of the poet, M. Valerius Martialis.



res non parta labore, sed relicta ;  
 non ingratus ager, focus perennis ;  
 lis nunquam, toga rara, mens quieta ;  
 vires ingenuae, salubre corpus ;  
 5 prudens simplicitas, pares amici ;  
 convictus facilis, sine arte mensa ;  
 nox non ebria, sed soluta curis ;  
 somnus qui faciat brevis tenebras ;  
 quod sis, esse velis, nihilque malis,  
 10 summum nec metuas diem, nec optes.

105. *The Hanging Gardens of Babylon.*

Super arcem, vulgatum Graecorum fabulis miraculum,  
 pensiles horti sunt, summam murorum altitudinem aequantes  
 multarumque arborum umbra et proceritate amoeni. Saxo  
 pilae, quae totum onus sustinent, instructae sunt ; super  
 15 pilas lapide quadrato solum stratum est, patiens terrae,  
 quam altam iniciunt, et humoris, quo rigant terras ; adeoque  
 validas arbores sustinent moles, ut stipites earum VIII  
 cubitorum spatium crassitudine aequent, in L pedum altitu-  
 dinem emineant frugiferaeque sint, ut si terra sua alerentur.  
 20 Et cum vestustas non opera solum manu facta, sed etiam

1. res, *property*. — parta : from parere (pario).

2. perennis, -e (per + annus), *unfailing*. Cf. Eng. *perennial*.

3. lis, litis, *lawsuit*. — toga : the compulsory wearing of the toga on all formal occasions was one of the "afflictions" of city life, contrasted with country freedom.

4. ingenuus, *genteel*, i.e., suited to the free-born man of leisure

who works not for a living. — salubris, *healthy*.

6. convictus, -us, *home society*, "set," *social intercourse*.

8. tenebrae, -arum = nox.

9. velis : sc. si. — malis : verb.

10. diem : sc. vitae.

11. vulgare, *to spread abroad*, *publish*. — fabula, *tale*.

12. pensilis, *hanging*.

14. pila, *pillar*.

16. rigare, *to moisten, irrigate*.

ipsam naturam paulatim exedendo perimat, haec moles, quae tot arborum radicibus premitur tantique nemoris pondere onerata est, inviolata durat: quippe xx pedes lati parietes sustinent, undecim pedum intervallo distantes, ut procul visentibus silvae montibus suis imminere videantur. 5  
 Syriae regem Babylone regnantem hoc opus esse molitum memoriae proditum est, amore coniugis victum, quae desiderio nemorum silvarumque in campestribus locis virum compulit amoenitatem naturae genere huius operis imitari.

106. *A Famous Fight.*

In the year B.C. 480 Xerxes, King of Persia (485-465), set out from Sardes in Lydia upon his invasion of Greece. Crossing the Hellespont, he met with no opposition in his southward march until he reached **Thermopylae** (-arum), the narrow pass between northern and southern Greece. On this narrow spot between the mountains and the sea the Greeks under Leonidas made their "famous fight" (B.C. 480).

Cuius introitus in Graeciam quam terribilis, tam turpis ac 10  
 foedus discessus fuit. Namque cum Leonidas, rex Spartanorum, cum quattuor milibus militum angustias Thermopylarum occupasset, Xerxes contemptu paucitatis eos pugnam capessere iubet, quorum cognati Marathonia pugna interfecti fuerant: qui dum ulcisci suos quaerunt, principium cladis 15  
 fuere; succedente dein inutili turba maior caedes editur. Triduo ibi cum dolore et indignatione Persarum dimicatum. Quarta die cum nuntiatum esset Leonidae a viginti milibus

1. exedendo: from ex +  
 edere, *eat.* — perimere, to destroy.

5. imminere, to hang over.

10. Cuius = Xerxis.

11. Spartanus, a Spartan.

13. paucitatis: i.e., of the  
 Greeks.

14. capessere, to commence. —  
 cognatus, blood-relation, kinsman.

— Marathonia pugna: referring  
 to the Persian overthrow (B.C. 490)  
 in the second expedition against  
 Greece.

17. dimicatum: sc. est.

hostium summum cacumen teneri, tum hortatur socios, recedant et se ad meliora patriae tempora reservent ; sibi cum Spartanis fortunam experiendam ; plura se patriae quam vitae debere ; ceteros ad praesidia Graeciae servandos.

5 Audito regis imperio discessere ceteri, soli Lacedaemonii remanserunt. Initio huius belli sciscitantibus Delphis oracula responsum fuerat, aut regi Spartanorum aut urbi cadendum. Et idcirco rex Leonidas, cum in bellum proficisceretur, ita suos firmaverat, ut ire se parato ad moriendum

10 animo scirent. Angustias propterea occupaverat, ut cum paucis aut maiore gloria vinceret aut minore damno rei publicae caderet. Dimissis igitur sociis hortatur Spartanos, meminerint qualitercumque proeliatis cadendum esse ; cave-  
rent, ne fortius mansisse quam dimicasse videantur ; nec

15 exspectandum, ut ab hoste circumvenirentur, sed, dum nox occasionem daret, securis et lactis superveniendum ; nusquam victores honestius quam in castris hostium perituros. Nihil erat difficile persuadere persuasis mori : statim arma capiunt et sexcenti viri castra quingentorum milium

20 inrumpunt statimque regis praetorium petunt, aut cum illo aut, si ipsi oppressi essent, in ipsius potissimum sede morituri. Tumultus totis castris oritur. Spartani, postquam regem non inveniunt, per omnia castra victores vagantur ; caedunt sternuntque omnia, ut qui sciunt se

25 pugnare non spe victoriae, sed in mortis ultionem. Proelium a principio noctis in maiorem partem diei tractum.

1. cacumen, -inis, *summit.*

2. recedant: sc. ut.

3. fortunam experiendam: indir. disc. after a "verb of saying" implied in hortatur.

5. discessere is not infinitive. — soli L. remanserunt: 700 Thespian Boeotians remained with the Lacedaemonians.

6. sciscitari, *to enquire of.* — Delphis: locat.

11. damnum, *loss.* (Sometimes = *fine, penalty.*)

13. proeliari: proeliatis = militibus.

16. supervenire, *to fall upon.*

20. praetorium, *the general's tent.*

Ad postremum non victi, sed vincendo fatigati inter ingentes stratorum hostium catervas occiderunt.

107. *The Ant and the Fly.*

Formica et musca contendebant acriter  
 quae pluris esset. Musca sic coepit prior :  
 'Conferre nostris tu potes te laudibus ?' 5  
 Ubi immolatur, exta praegusto deum ;  
 moror inter aras, templa perlustro omnia ;  
 in capite regis sedeo, cum visum est mihi,  
 et matronarum casta delibo oscula ;  
 laboro nihil, atque optimis rebus fruor. 10  
 Quid horum simile tibi contingit, rustica ?'  
 'Est gloriosus sane convictus deum,  
 sed illi, qui invitatur, non qui invisus est.  
 Aras frequentas : nempe abigeris, cum venis ;  
 reges commemoras et matronarum oscula ; 15  
 super etiam iactas, tegere quod debet pudor ;  
 nihil laboras : ideo cum opus est, nil habes.  
 Ego granum in hiemem cum studiose congero,  
 te circa murum pasci video stercore ;  
 aestate me lacessis ; cum bruma est, siles ; 20

2. caterva, crowd, horde.

3. formica, ant. — musca, fly.

4. pluris, of more account.

6. immolatur: impersonal. —  
 exta, -orum, vitals (of the victim).  
 — praegustare, to taste beforehand.  
 — deum: objective = exta dis  
 oblata.

7. perlustrare, to go through.

8 visum est, seems good  
 to . . .

9. castus, pure, chaste. — deli-  
 bare, to taste of. — osculum: dimin.  
 of os, oris.

12. The response of the for-  
 mica. — convictus: (subst.) con  
 + vivere.

14. nempe, assuredly. — abi-  
 gere: ab + agere (drive).

15. commemorare, to make men-  
 tion of.

18. granum, grain, seed (col-  
 lectively).

19. stercus, -oris, dung.

20. bruma, winter; lit. the  
 shortest day (solstice) of winter,  
 i.e., brevima (breuma) = brevis-  
 sima (dies).

mori contractam cum te cogunt frigora,  
me copiosa recipit incolumem domus.  
Satis profecto rettudi superbiam.'

108. *The 'Good Old Times.'*

M'. Curius Dentatus triumphed over the Samnites in B.C. 290, and during the same year he was honored with a second triumph over the Sabini. In B.C. 275, the year of his second consulship, he signally defeated Pyrrhus near Beneventum, and the triumph of Curius was probably the finest ever seen in Rome up to that time.

In hac vita M'. Curius, cum de Samnitibus, de Sabinis,  
5 de Pyrrho triumphasset, consumpsit extremum tempus aeta-  
tis. Cuius quidem ego villam contemplans—abest enim  
non longe a me—admirari satis non possum vel hominis  
ipsius continentiam vel temporum disciplinam. Curio ad  
focum sedenti magnum auri pondus Samnites cum attulis-  
10 sent, repudiati sunt. Non enim aurum habere praeclarum  
sibi videri dixit, sed iis, qui haberent aurum, imperare.  
Poteratne tantus animus efficere non iucundam senectutem?  
In agris erant tum senatores, id est, senes; siquidem aranti  
L. Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse  
15 factum. A villa in senatum arcessebatur et Curius et ceteri

3. *retundere* (-tundo), -tudi, -tusum, *to beat back, check*.

4. *in hac vita*: sc. *rustica* or *agricolae*.—*de*, *over*.

6. *villa*, *country*, or *farm-house*.

7. *a me*: i.e., *a meo fundo* (*farm*).

8. *continentia*: infer meaning from etymol. and English.—*ad focum sedenti*: "Here it was that the ambassadors of the Sam-

nites, finding him boiling turnips in the chimney corner, offered him a present of gold." (Plutarch's *Marcus Cato*.)

10. *praeclarum* (*noble, fine*) is predic. after *videri*. Subj. of *videri*?

13. *in agris* = *in fundis suis*.—*siquidem*, *since*.

14. *L. Quinctius Cincinnatus* was dictator twice, viz.: in B.C. 458 and in 439.

senes ; ex quo, qui eos arcessebant, viatores nominati sunt. Num igitur horum senectus miserabilis fuit, qui se agri cultione oblectabant ? Mea quidem sententia haud scio an nulla beatior possit esse.

109. *A Narrow Escape from the Ecls.*

Cum divus Augustus cenaret apud Vedium Pollionem, 5  
fregit unus ex servis eius crystallinum. Rapi eum Vedius  
iussit, ne vulgari quidem more periturum. Murenis obici  
iubebatur, quas ingentis in piscina continebat. Evasit e  
manibus puer et confugit ad Caesaris pedes, nihil aliud  
petiturus, quam ut aliter periret, ne esca fieret. Motus est 10  
novitate crudelitatis Caesar et illum quidem mitti, crystallina  
autem omnia coram se frangi iussit, complerique piscinam.  
Fuit Caesari sic castigandus amicus.

110. *A Novel Way to cross a River.*

Tandem ad flumen Oxum ipse pervenit prima fere vespera,  
sed exercitus magna pars non potuerat consequi. In edito 15  
monte ignes iubet fieri, ut ii, qui aegre sequebantur, haud  
procul castris ipsos abesse cognoscerent. Eos autem, qui  
primi agminis erant, mature cibo ac potione firmatos, implere  
alios utres, alios vasa, quibuscumque aqua portari posset,

1. viator : lit. *traveller* ; (here)  
*an official summoner*.

5. cenare : cf. *cena*, *dinner*. —  
*apud*, *with*, or *at the house of*.

6. crystallinus, *crystalline* ; sc.  
*vas*, *vasis* (neut.).

7. vulgari . . . more : i.e.,  
crucifixion for slaves. — murena :  
an eel-sort of fish.

8. piscina, *fish-pond*. — contine-  
bat : subj. is *Vedius*.

10. esca, *bait*, or *food for fish*.

14. tandem : i.e., after a terri-  
ble march through the regio *Sog-  
diana*, east of the Oxus, a river  
flowing originally into the Caspian,  
but later into the sea of Aral. —  
*ipse* : sc. *Alexander*. — *prima*  
. . . *vespera* = *prima statim*  
*nocte* or *prima vigilia*.

18. mature : adv.

19. eos . . . alios . . . alios :  
subj. of *implere*. This infinit.  
clause depends upon what word ?

iussit ac suis opem ferre. Sed qui intemperantius hause-  
rant, intercluso spiritu extincti sunt multoque maior horum  
numerus fuit, quam ullo amiserat proelio. At ille thoracem  
adhuc indutus nec aut cibo reffectus aut potu, qua veniebat  
5 exercitus, constitit nec ante ad curandum corpus recessit,  
quam praeterierant, qui agmen claudebant, totamque eam  
noctem cum magno animi motu perpetuis vigiliis egit. Nec  
postero die laetior erat, quia nec navigia habebat nec pons  
erigi poterat, circum amnem nudo solo et materia maxime  
10 sterili. Consilium igitur, quod unum necessitas subiecerat,  
init. Utres quam plurimos stramentis refertos dividit. His  
incubantes transavere amnem, quique primi transierant, in  
statione erant, dum traicerent ceteri. Hoc modo sexto  
demum die in ulteriore ripa totum exercitum exposuit.

### III. Curious Legislation.

The personal history of Lycurgus, the Spartan law-giver, is enveloped  
in much mystery. As an illustration of this uncertainty, even among  
the Greeks themselves, Aristotle places Lycurgus at least 200 years  
14 later than does Xenophon.

15 Lycurgus cum fratri suo Polydectae, Spartanorum regi,  
successisset regnumque sibi vindicare potuisset, Charilao,  
filio eius, qui natus postumus erat, cum ad aetatem adultam

1. suis: who were still on the  
march towards the camp. — hau-  
rire (haurio), hausi, haustum, to  
drink.

3. thorax, breast-plate.

4. indutus, covered with (with  
accus. of the thing). — qua: sc.  
via or consider as relat. adv.

5. ante . . . quam.

6. agmen claudere, to bring up  
the rear.

7. noctem agere, to pass the  
night.

9. solo: solum is subst.

11. stramentum, straw. — re-  
fectus, stuffed.

12. incubare, to lie upon.

15. Polydectes, -ae.

16. vindicare, to lay legal claim  
to. — Charilaus (-i) was not born  
until after his father's death, hence  
postumus.

pervenisset, regnum summa fide restituit, ut intellegerent omnes, quanto plus apud bonos pietatis iura quam omnes opes valerent. Medio igitur tempore, dum infans convalescit, tutelamque eius administrat, non habentibus Spartanis leges instituit, non inventione earum magis quam exemplo 5 clarior: siquidem nihil lege ulla in alios sanxit, cuius non ipse primus in se documentum daret. Populum in obsequia principum, principes ad iustitiam imperiorum formavit. Parsimoniam omnibus suasit, existimans laborem militiae assidue frugalitatis consuetudine faciliorem fore. Eni singula 10 non pecunia, sed compensatione mercium iussit. Auri argentique usum velut omnium scelerum materiam sustulit. Administrationem rei publicae per ordines divisit: regibus potestatem bellorum, magistratibus iudicia et annuos successores, senatui custodiam legum, populo sublegendi senatum 15 vel creandi quos vellet magistratus potestatem permisit. Fundos omnium aequaliter inter omnes divisit, ut aequata patrimonia neminem potentiorum altero redderent. Convivari omnes publice iussit, ne cuius divitiae vel luxuria in occulto essent. Iuvenibus non amplius una veste uti toto 20 anno permissum, nec quemquam cultius quam alterum

2. *pietas, loyalty* (with regard to kindred, country, etc.).

3. *convalescere, to gain strength, grow up.*

4. *tutela, protection, guardianship.* — *administrat: sc. Lycurgus.*

5. *earum: sc. legum.*

7. *documentum (docēre), lesson, proof.* — *obsequium, obedience.*

8. *principum* is object. *genit.*

9. *militia, military service.* — *assiduus: infer from Engl.*

10. *singula: NOT with pecunia.*

11. *compensatio, equivalent,* i.e., by barter.

14. *magistratibus: i.e., the board of five Ephors elected annually by the people as a check upon the kings.*

15. *senatui: the so-called Gerousia, or Council of Elders.* — *sublegere, to choose* (in place of).

— *senatum: gov. by sublegendi.*

16. *creandi* governs what word?

18. *patrimonium, -i.*

20. *in* (or *ex*) *occulto*, or *per occultum, in secret.*

21. *culte, elegantly.*



progredi nec epulari opulentius, ne imitatio in luxuriam verteretur. Pueros puberes non in forum sed in agrum deduci praecepit, ut primos annos non in luxuria sed in opere et in laboribus agerent. Nihil eos somni causa  
 5 substernere et vitam sine pulmento degere neque prius in urbem redire, quam viri facti essent, statuit. Virgines sine dote nubere iussit, ut uxores eligerentur, non pecuniae, severiusque matrimonia sua viri coercerent, cum nullis frenis dotis tenerentur. Maximum honorem non divitum et poten-  
 10 tium, sed pro gradu aetatis senum esse voluit, nec sane usquam terrarum locum honoratiorem senectus habet. Dein ut aeternitatem legibus suis daret, iure iurando obligat civitatem, nihil eos de eius legibus mutaturos, priusquam reverteretur, et simulat se ad oraculum Delphicum proficisci,  
 15 consulturum quid addendum mutandumque legibus videretur. Proficiscitur autem Cretam ibique perpetuum exilium egit abique in mare ossa sua moriens iussit, ne relatis Lacedaemonem solutos se Spartani religione iuris iurandi in dissolvendis legibus arbitrarentur.

### 112. *The Fortunate Islands.*

20        Nos manet oceanus circumvagus ; arva, beata  
               petamus arva, divites et insulas,

2. pubes, -eris, *grown up*. — in forum deduci: i.e., after the Roman fashion, when a boy's education as a citizen began.

4. causa (and gratia) used how?

5. vitam (or diem) degere, *to live*. — pulmentum: lit. *anything eaten with bread*, hence *sauce, relish*.

7. dos, dotis, *marriage portion, dowry*.

8. matrimonia = uxores.

11. usquam terrarum = *ubique*.

16. Creta, *the island Crete*.

17. relatis: sc. ossibus.

18. religio, *obligation*.

20. circumvagus: the "Ocean-stream" was regarded as flowing around the earth.

reddit ubi Cererem tellus inarata quotannis  
 et inputata floret usque vinea,  
 germinat et nunquam fallentis termes olivae,  
 suamque pulla ficus ornat arborem;  
 mella cava manant ex ilice; montibus altis 5  
 levis crepante lymphæ desilit pede.  
 Illic iniussæ veniunt ad mulctra capellæ,  
 refertque tenta grex amicus ubera;  
 nec vespertinus circumgemit ursus ovile,  
 nec intumescit alta viperis humus. 10  
 Pluraque felices mirabimur: ut neque largis  
 aquosus Eurus arva radat imbribus,  
 pinguis nec siccis urantur semina glaebis.

\* \* \* \* \*

Nulla nocent pecori contagia, nullius astri  
 gregem aestuosa torret impotentia. 15  
 Juppiter illa piæ secrevit litora genti,  
 ut inquinavit ære tempus aureum.

1. Ceres: goddess of agriculture, esp. corn, fruits, etc. Cere-rem = *harvest, fruit*.

2. inputatus: in + putare, to prune, trim vines. — vinea, the vine, grape.

3. termes, -itis, bough.

4. pullus, dark-colored (i.e., when ripe). — ficus, fig. — suam arborem: i.e., without grafting.

5. cavus, hollow. — ilex, holm-oak.

6. crepare, tinkle, jingle. —

lymphæ, water (especially from springs).

7. mulctrum, milking-pail. — capella, she-goat (dimin. of caper).

8. tendere (tendo), tetendi, tentum and tensum. — amicus is adj.

9. ursus, bear.

10. vipera, viper, adder.

12. radere, to scrape, shave; ravage.

13. glaeba, clod. Cf. Eng. glebe.

17. aes, aeris, bronze (lit. copper).

113. *A Model Young Lady.*

Tristissimus haec tibi scribo, Fundani nostri filia minore defuncta, qua puella nihil umquam festivius, amabilius, nec modo longiore vita sed prope immortalitate dignius vidi. Nondum annos quattuordecim impleverat, et iam illi anilis  
 5 prudentia, matronalis gravitas erat, et tamen suavitas puellaris cum virginali verecundia. Ut illa patris cervicibus inhaerebat ! Ut nos amicos paternos et amanter et modeste complectebatur ! ut nutrices, ut paedagogos, ut praeceptores pro suo quemque officio diligebat ! quam studiose, quam  
 10 intellegenter lectitabat ! ut parce custoditeque ludebat ! Qua illa temperantia, qua patientia, qua etiam constantia novissimam valetudinem tulit ! Medicis obsequabatur, sororem, patrem adhortabatur, ipsamque se destitutam corporis viribus vigore animi sustinebat. Duravit hic illi usque  
 15 ad extremum nec aut spatio valetudinis aut metu mortis infractus est, quo plures graviioresque nobis causas relinqueret et desiderii et doloris. O triste plane acerbumque funus ! o morte ipsa mortis tempus indignius ! Iam destinata erat egregio iuveni, iam electus nuptiarum dies, iam  
 20 nos vocati. Quod gaudium quo maerore mutatum est !

1. scribo : Pliny, the Younger, writes (in a letter) relative to the death of a young girl, daughter of his friend, *Fundanus*.

2. defuncta : cf. Eng. *defunct*. — nihil : obj. of vidi. — festivus, gay, charming.

3. prope, almost.

4. anilis : infer meaning from anus, -us.

6. verecundia, shyness, modesty.

8. complecti (-tor), to receive warmly, care for. — nutrix, -icis : infer meaning from nutrire. —

paedagogus : slave who had charge of a child, esp. on the way to and from school. Cf. Eng. *pedagogue*.

9. diligere (-ligo), to love.

10. lectitare, to read aloud.

11. illa : subj. of tulit.

12. valetudo, health (good or bad).

14. hic : i.e., vigor animi.

18. funus, -eris, funeral ; death.

— indignius : explained by what follows.

19. nuptiae, -arum, wedding.

Non possum exprimere verbis quantum animo vulnus acceperim, cum audiui Fundanum ipsum, praecipientem, quod in vestes margarita gemmas fuerat erogaturus, hoc in tus et unguenta et odores impenderetur.

#### 114. *The Foundation of Carthage.*

Hoc igitur modo Tyrrii Alexandri auspiciis conditi parsimonia et labore quaerendi cito convalere. Ante cladem dominorum cum et opibus et multitudine abundarent, missa in Africam iuventute Uticam condidere; cum interim Mutto rex Tyro decedit filio Pygmalione et Elissa filia, insignis formae virgine, heredibus institutis. Sed populus Pygmalioni admodum puero regnum tradidit. Elissa quoque Acerbae avunculo suo, sacerdoti Herculis, qui honos secundus a rege erat, nubit. Huic magnae, sed dissimulae opes erant, aurumque metu regis non tectis, sed terrae crediderat — quam rem etsi homines ignorabant, fama tamen loquebatur. Qua incensus Pygmalion oblitus iuris humani avunculum suum eundemque generum sine respectu pietatis occidit. Elissa diu fratrem propter scelus aversata ad postremum dissimulato odio mitigatoque interim vultu fugam tacito molitur adsumptis quibusdam principibus in societa-

3. vestes, margarita (-um, -i), gemmas (*jewels, gems*): i.e., for the wedding. — erogare, *to expend*. — tus: for the funeral.

5. Tyrrii (-orum), the inhabitants of Tyre (Tyros or Tyrus, -i), *Tyrians*.

9. Pygmalion, -onis. — Elissa, -ae: the Dido of Vergil. — insignis, -e.

10. heres, *heir, successor*.

11. admodum puer, *only a boy; quite young*.

12. avunculus, *maternal uncle*. — sacerdos, *priest*.

14. tectum, -i. — credere (credo), credidi, -ditum, *to consign, i.e., hide*.

17. eundem, (here) *likewise*.

18. aversari, *to shun*.

20. tacito: *adv.*

tem, quibus par odium in regem esse eandemque fugiendi cupiditatem arbitrabatur. Pygmalion, cognita sororis fuga, cum impio bello fugientem persequi parasset, aegre precibus matris deorumque minis victus quievit. Itaque Elissa delata  
 5 in Africae sinum incolas eius loci adventu peregrinorum mutuarumque rerum commercio gaudentes in amicitiam sollicitat. Dein empto loco, qui corio bovis tegi posset, in quo fessos longa navigatione socios, quoad proficisceretur, reficere posset, corium in tenuissimas partes secari iubet  
 10 atque ita maius loci spatium, quam petierat, occupat : unde postea ei loco Byrsae nomen fuit.

Confluentibus deinde vicinis locorum, qui spe lucri, multa hospitibus venalia inferebant, sedesque ibi <sup>\*</sup>statuentibus ex frequentia hominum velut instar civitatis effectum est.  
 15 Itaque consentientibus omnibus Karthago conditur statuto annuo vectigali pro solo urbis. In primis fundamentis caput bubulum inventum est, quod auspiciū fructuosae quidem, sed laboriosae perpetuoque servae urbis fuit ; propter quod in alium locum urbs translata. Ibi quoque  
 20 equi caput repertum, bellicosum potentemque populum futurum significans, urbi auspicatam sedem dedit. Tunc ad

4. minae, -arum, *threats*.

5. sinus, -us, lit. *curve, fold* ; (here) *bay, gulf*. (See map.) — peregrinus, *strange, foreign*.

6. mutuarum rerum commercio : what economists call "*barter*." — gaudentes agrees with incolas.

8. fessus, *worn out*. — quoad profic. : the settlement was to be but temporary.

11. Byrsa, -ae : cf. βύρσα, *hide*.

12. vicinus, (*neighboring*) = subst. — lucrum, *gain*.

13. venalis, *for sale*. — sedes : plur. ; obj. of statuentibus.

14. frequentia, *multitude*. — velut instar c., *as if the semblance (instar) of a state*. (A. and G. 223, e. ; G. 372 ; H. 398, 4.)

15. statuto : partic. of statuere.

16. solum : subst. — fundamentum : infer from fundere, *to pour* ; *found*.

17. bubulus, (adj.) *ox-, of cattle*. — auspiciū : predic.

18. servus : *adject*.

21. auspicatus, *auspicious*.

opinionem novae urbis concurrentibus gentibus brevi et  
populus et civitas magna facta.

115. *A Desperate March.*

Ipse cum mille equitibus peditumque expedita manu  
interiorem Persidis regionem sub ipsum Vergiliarum sidus  
petiit multisque imbribus et prope intolerabili tempestate 5  
vexatus procedere tamen, quo intenderat, perseveravit.  
Ventum erat ad iter perpetuis<sup>o</sup> obsitum nivibus, quas frigoris  
vis gelu adstrinxerat, locorumque squalor et solitudines  
inviae fatigatum militem terrebant, humanarum rerum termi-  
nos se videre credentem. Omnia vasta atque sine ullo 10  
humani cultus vestigio attoniti intuebantur et, antequam lux  
quoque et caelum ipsos deficerent, reverti iuebant. Rex  
castigare territos supersedit: ceterum ipse equo desiluit  
pedesque per nives et concretam glaciem ingredi coepit.  
Erubuerunt non sequi primum amici, deinde copiarum duces, 15  
ad ultimum milites: primusque rex dolabra glaciem per-  
fringens iter sibi fecit, exemplum regis ceteri imitati sunt.  
Tandem propemodum invias silvas emensi humani cultus  
rara vestigia et passim errantes pecorum greges reperere.  
At incolae, qui sparsis tuguriis habitabant, cum se callibus 20  
inviis saeptos esse credidissent, ut conspexere hostium

1. brevi: adv.

3. Ipse: sc. Alexander.

4. Vergiliae, -arum: the Pleiades (rise at end of spring). — sidus, -eris, constellation; season of the year.

8. gelu, -us, cold, frost. — adstringere (-stringo), -strinxi, -strictum, to bind hard, freeze.

9. militem: collective.

10. credentem: agrees with militem.

14. con crescere (-cresco), -crevi, -cretum, to congeal (lit. to grow together). — glacies, -ei, ice.

15. erubescere (-sco), -rubui, to feel ashamed.

18. propemodum, almost. — emetiri (-metiri), -mensus sum, to traverse (lit. to measure off).

20. callis, mountain-path, defile.

21. saepire (-io), -psi, -ptum, to hedge in, enclose.

agmen, interfectis, qui comitari fugientes non poterant, devios montes et nivibus obsitos petiverunt.

116. *The Die is cast.*

In the struggle for supremacy between Pompeius and Caesar, the senate had voted that Caesar must disband his army by a given day, or be regarded as a public enemy. When he learned of this, and that the veto of the tribunes, who were friendly to himself, had been disregarded and that they had withdrawn from Rome, he decided quickly to assume the offensive and to march from his province into Italy.

Cum ergo sublatam tribunorum intercessionem ipsosque urbe cessisse nuntiatum est, praemissis confestim clam  
5 cohortibus, ne qua suspicio moveretur, et spectaculo publico per dissimulationem interfuit et formam, qua ludum gladiatorum erat aedificaturus, consideravit et ex consuetudine convivio se frequenti dedit. Dein post solis occasum, mulis  
10 et proximo pistrino ad vehiculum iunctis, occultissimum iter modico comitatu ingressus est; et cum luminibus extinctis decessisset via, diu errabundus, tandem ad lucem duce reperto, per angustissimos tramites pedibus evasit; consecutusque cohortis ad Rubiconem flumen, qui provinciae eius finis erat, paulum constitit, ac, conversus ad proximos  
15 'Etiam nunc,' inquit, 'regredi possumus; quod si ponticulum transierimus, omnia armis agenda erunt.' Cunctanti ostentum tale factum est. Quidam eximia magnitudine et forma in proximo sedens repente apparuit, harundine canens; ad

1. comitari (-tor): infer meaning from analysis.

2. obserere (-sero), -sevi, -situm, to cover over (lit. to sow over).

3. intercessio, veto, protest.

8. mulus, mule.

10. comitatus, escort.

11. ad lucem, at daybreak.

12. trames, by-path.

13. Rubico: a little stream between Gallia and Umbria, flowing into the Mare Hadriaticum.

16. ostentum, -i, prodigy, portent.

18. harundo, reed, shepherd's pipe.

quem audiendum cum praeter pastores plurimi etiam ex stationibus milites concurrissent, rapta ab uno tuba prosilivit ad flumen et ingenti spiritu classicum exorsus pertendit ad alteram ripam. Tunc Caesar 'Eatur,' inquit, 'quo deorum ostenta et inimicorum iniquitas vocat. Iacta alea est,' 5 inquit.

117. *The Subjugation of the Horse.*

Equus sedare solitus quo fuerat sitim,  
dum sese aper volutat, turbavit vadum.  
Hinc orta lis est. Sonipes iratus fero  
auxilium petiit hominis, quem dorso levans 10  
redit ad hostem. Iactis hunc telis eques  
postquam interfecit, sic locutus traditur :  
'Lactor tulisse auxilium me precibus tuis ;  
nam praedam cepi et didici, quam sis utilis' ;  
atque ita coegit frenos invitum pati. 15  
Tum maestus ille : 'Parvae vindictam rei  
dum quaero demens, servitutem repperi.'

118. *How Damocles lost a Dinner.*

Cum quidam ex Dionysii maioris adsentatoribus, Damocles, commemoraret in sermone copias eius, opes, maiestatem dominatus, rerum abundantiam, magnificentiam aedium 20

3. classicum, *the trumpet-call* by which the troops were called together. — exordiri (-ordior), -orsus sum, *to begin*.

5. inimicorum iniquitas: see historical note. — alea, *a die*.

7. sedare, *to allay*. — quo, *where* (sc. loco).

9. lis, litis, *quarrel*. — sonipes (analyze it) = equus. — fero: subst. referring to aper.

10. levare, *to lift up*.

12. tradere, *to relate*.

16. vindictam = ultionem.

18. maioris: so called in distinction from his son Dionysius, the Younger, who succeeded B.C. 367 to his father's power at Syracuse. — adsentator, *flatterer*.

20. dominatus, -us, *despotism, sovereignty*.



regiarum, negaretque unquam beatiorem quemquam fuisse :  
 'Visne igitur,' inquit, 'o Damocle, quoniam te haec vita  
 delectat, ipse eandem degustare et fortunam experiri meam?'

Cum se ille cupere dixisset, conlocari iussit hominem in  
 5 aureo lecto strato pulcherrimo textili stragulo, magnificis  
 operibus picto, abacosque complures ornavit argento auroque  
 caelato. Tum ad mensam eximia forma pueros delectos  
 iussit consistere eosque nutum illius intuentes diligenter  
 ministrare. Aderant unguenta, coronae; incendebantur  
 10 odores; mensae exquisitissimis epulis exstruebantur. For-  
 tunatus sibi Damocles videbatur. In hoc medio apparatu  
 fulgentem gladium e lacunari saeta equina aptum demitti  
 iussit, ut impenderet illius beati cervicibus. Itaque nec  
 pulcros illos ministratores aspiciebat nec plenum artis argen-  
 15 tum nec manum porrigebat in mensam; denique exoravit  
 tyrannum ut abire liceret, quod iam beatus nollet esse.  
 Satisne videtur declarasse Dionysius, nihil esse ei beatum  
 cui semper aliqui terror impendeat?

### 119. *A Trick that did not work.*

For notes on Regulus and Cannae see introductory notes to Nos. 73  
 and 23 respectively.

Sed ut laudandus Regulus in conservando iure iurando,  
 20 sic decem illi, quos post Cannensem pugnam iuratos ad

3. *degustare*: how far is the  
 preposition in compound verbs  
 to be thought of in transla-  
 tion?

5. *lecto*: subst. — *stragulum*,  
*covering, rug*.

6. *pingere* (*pingo*), *pinxi*, *pic-  
 tum*, *to embroider* (lit. *to paint*). —  
*abacus*, *side-board*.

7. *caelare*, *to carve in relief*.

9. *unguentum*, *ointment, per-  
 fume*.

10. *conquisitus* = adj. — *epu-  
 lae, -arum*, *food, viands*.

12. *lacunar, -aris*, *ceiling*. —  
*saeta*, *hair* (of an animal).

13. *cervix*: often in plur. =  
*neck and shoulders*.

19. *ut . . . sic*: correl.

20. *decem illi*: sc. *captivi*.

senatum misit Hannibal se in castra redituros ea, quorum erant potiti Poeni, nisi de redimendis captivis impetravissent, si non redierunt, vituperandi. De quibus non omnes uno modo : nam Polybius, bonus auctor in primis, ex decem nobilissimis, qui tum erant missi, novem revertisse dicit, re a senatu non impetrata ; unum ex decem, qui paulo post quam erat egressus e castris, redisset, quasi aliquid esset oblitus, Romae remansisse. Reditu enim in castra liberatum se esse iure iurando interpretabatur, non recte ; fraus enim adstringit non dissolvit periurium. Fuit igitur stulta calliditas perverse imitata prudentiam. Itaque decrevit senatus ut ille veterator et callidus victus ad Hannibalem duceretur.

120. *Enjoy the Passing Hour.*

Dum licet, et veros etiam nunc degitis annos,  
ludite. Eunt anni more fluentis aquae.  
Nec, quae praeteriit, iterum revocabitur unda,  
nec, quae praeteriit, hora redire potest.

15

1. se . . . redituros : indir. disc. after iuratos. — in castra ea : there were two Roman camps at Cannae.

3. si non redierunt : the writer seems to doubt the truth of the story. — vituperandi : agrees with decem illi (in l. 20, p. 146). — non omnes : sc. se gesserunt.

4. Polybius, bonus auctor : the Greek history of P. in 40 bks., ending with the destruction of Corinth, B.C. 146, was a work vast in scope and written with great impartiality and care. — in primis

(written also *imprimis*), especially.

5. re : i.e., the ransom of the prisoners.

8. reditu : causal.

9. interpretari, to put an interpretation upon, explain.

10. adstringere, to confirm, make binding. — calliditas : infer from callidus.

12. veterator, -oris, crafty fellow, "old fox."

14. licet : sc. vobis.

16. quae : remember the frequent precedence of the relat. clause in Latin.

Utendum est aetate. Cito pede labitur aetas,  
 nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit.  
 Nostra sine auxilio fugiunt bona. Carpite florem,  
 qui, nisi carptus erit, turpiter ipse cadet.

121. *Alexander apes Achilles.*

5 Betim egregia edita pugna multisque vulneribus confectum  
 deseruerunt sui, nec tamen segnius proelium capescebat  
 lubricis armis suo pariter atque hostium sanguine. Sed cum  
 undique telis peteretur, ad postremum exhaustis viribus  
 vivus in potestatem hostium pervenit. Quo adducto, inso-  
 10 lenti gaudio iuvenis elatus, alias virtutis etiam in hoste  
 mirator, 'Non, ut voluisti,' inquit, 'morieris, sed quidquid  
 in captivum inveniri potest, passurum esse te cogita.' Ille  
 non interrito modo, sed contumaci quoque vultu intuens  
 regem, nullam ad minas eius reddidit vocem. Tum Alexan-  
 15 der, 'Videtisne obstinatum ad tacendum?' inquit, 'num  
 genu posuit? num vocem supplicem misit? Vincam tamen  
 silentium et si nihil aliud, certe gemitu interpellabo.' Ira  
 deinde vertit in rabiem, iam tum peregrinos ritus nova  
 subeunte fortuna. Per talos enim spirantis lora traiecta  
 20 sunt religatumque ad currum traxere circa urbem equi,  
 gloriant rege, Achillen, a quo genus ipse deduceret, imita-  
 tum se esse poena in hostem capienda.

3. *carpere*, to pluck, gather; almost = to enjoy. — *flos*, flower; *spring-time of youth*.

5. *Betis* was praefectus Gazae, a town which Alexander stormed.

7. *lubricus*, slippery. Cf. Eng. *lubricate*.

11. *mirator*: suffix? part of speech? meaning? — *ut (voluisti)*: notice the mode of verb.

15. *obstinatum* (sc. *eum*), determined, obstinate.

19. *talus*, ankle, foot. — *spirare*, to breathe, i.e., live.

122. *Alexander plays the Gentleman.*

Igitur cum tempestivis conviviis dies pariter noctesque consumeret, satietatem epularum ludis interpellabat: non contentus artificum, quos e Graecia exciverat, turba; quippe captivae iubebantur suo ritu canere inconditum et abhorrens peregrinis auribus carmen. Inter quas unam rex forte 5 conspexit maestiolem quam ceteras et producentibus eam verecunde reluctantem. Excellens erat forma et formam pudor honestabat. Deiectis in terram oculis et, quantum licebat, ore velato suspicionem praebuit regi, nobiliorem esse, quam ut inter convivales ludos deberet ostendi. Ergo 10 interrogata, quanam esset, neptim se Ochi, qui nuper regnasset in Persis, filio eius genitam esse respondit, uxorem Hystaspis fuisse. Propinquus hic Darei fuerat, magni et ipse exercitus praetor. Adhuc in animo regis tenues reliquiae pristini moris haerebant. Itaque fortunam regia 15 stirpe genitae et tam celebre nomen [neptim Ochi] reveritus non dimitti modo captivam, sed etiam restitui ei suas opes iussit, virum quoque requiri, ut reperto coniugem redderet.

123. *Homo doctus in se semper divitias habet.*

Homo doctus in se semper divitias habet.  
Simonides, qui scripsit egregium melos,

20

1. A convivium tempestivum was a banquet beginning early, i.e., earlier than was usually considered proper.

4. inconditus, uncouth, artless (lit. not put together).

6. producentibus: after eam . . . reluctantem.

11. quanam esset: why sub-

junc.? — neptis, -is, grand-daughter. — Ochus, -i.

14. praetor, -oris, head, leader. — reliquiae, -arum, remains.

18. coniunx, -ugis, spouse, (husband or wife).

20. Simonides was a famous lyric poet, born on Ceos (Cia or Cea), one of the Cyclades. — melos, -i, song.

- quo paupertatem sustineret facilius,  
circum ire coepit urbes Asiae nobiles,  
mercede accepta laudem victorum canens.  
Hoc genere quaestus postquam locuples factus est,  
5 redire in patriam voluit cursu pelagio ;  
erat autem, ut aiunt, natus in Cia insula :  
ascendit navem, quam tempestas horrida  
simul et vetustas medio dissolvit mari.  
Hi zonas, illi res pretiosas colligunt,  
10 subsidium vitae. Quidam curiosior :  
‘Simonide, tu ex opibus nil sumis tuis?’  
‘Mecum,’ inquit, ‘mea sunt cuncta.’ Tunc pauci enatant,  
quia plures onere degravati perierant.  
Praedones adsunt, rapiunt, quod quisque extulit,  
15 nudos relinquunt. Forte Clazomenae prope  
antiqua fuit urbs, quam petierunt naufragi.  
Hic litterarum quidam studio deditus,  
Simonidis qui saepe versus legerat  
eratque absentis admirator maximus,  
20 sermone ab ipso cognitum cupidissime  
ad se recepit ; veste, nummis, familia  
hominem exornavit. Ceteri tabulam suam  
portant rogantes victum. Quos casu obvios  
Simonides ut vidit : ‘Dixi,’ inquit, ‘mea  
25 mecum esse cuncta ; vos quod rapuistis, perit.’

3. merces is fem.  
4. quaestus, -us, *gain*.  
5. pelagius (adj.), *sea- ; by sea*.  
(Pelagus is poet. = *mare*.)  
8. dissolvere = *frangere*.  
9. zona, *girdle ; money-belt, purse*.  
12. enatare, *to escape by swimming*.  
13. degravare, *to weigh down*.

14. praedo, *plunderer, robber*.  
15. Clazomenae, -arum : a city of Ionia in Asia Minor.  
22. tabula : a votive tablet, on which was painted the shipwreck, designed, when carried, to move the passer-by to alms-giving.  
23. victus, -us : cf. vivere.  
25. perit : subject ?

124. *How Horatius kept the Bridge.*

After Tarquinius Superbus had been expelled from Rome, (according to the commonly-received legend) he fled to Lars Porsina, King of Clusium, an Etruscan town. Porsina in the interest of the banished Tarquin marched on Rome, where he got possession of the Janiculum-hill, or ridge, on the right (west) bank. The Janiculum, which the Romans had defended with an *arx*, was connected with the left bank, or Rome proper, by the *pons sublicius*, i.e., *the pile-bridge* (*sublicae* = *bridge piling*).

Iam Tarquinius ad Lartem Porsinam, Clusinum regem, perfugerant. Ibi miscendo consilium precesque nunc orabant, ne se, oriundos ex Etruscis, eiusdem sanguinis nominisque, egentes exulare pateretur. Porsina Romam infesto exercitu venit. Non umquam ante tantus terror senatum 5 invasit: adeo valida res tum Clusina erat magnumque Porsinae nomen. Cum hostes adessent, pro se quisque in urbem ex agris demigrant, urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset Horatius Cocles: id munimentum illo die fortuna urbis 10 Romanae habuit. Qui positus forte in statione pontis, cum captum repentino impetu Ianiculum atque inde citatos decurrere hostes vidisset, trepidamque turbam suorum arma ordinesque relinquere, reprehensans singulos, obsistens obtestansque deum et hominum fidem testabatur, nequiquam 15 deserto praesidio eos fugere. Si transitum pontem a tergo

3. *Etrusci, the Etruscans*, a people of central-western Italy.

4. *egens, -ntis, needy, in want*. — *exulare, to live in exile*. — *infestus, hostile*.

6. *res Clusina, the power of Clusium*.

9. *ni* = *si non*.

12. *cum captum . . . relin-*

*quere*: the *orat. obl.* in this sentence depends on *vidisset*.

14. *obsistens*: get meaning by analysis.

15. *obtestari*. (*testari, to declare, call to witness*.) — *deum* = *deorum*.

16. *transitus, -us*: analyze. Cf. Eng. *transit*.

reliquissent, iam plus hostium in Palatio Capitolioque quam in Ianiculo fore. Itaque monere, ut pontem ferro igni, quacumque vi possint, interrumpant; se impetum hostium, quantum corpore uno posset obsisti, excepturum. Vadit  
 5 inde in primum aditum pontis, insignisque inter conspecta cedentium pugnae terga ipso miraculo audaciae obstupescit hostis. Duos tamen cum eo pudor tenuit, Sp. Larcium ac T. Herminium, ambos claros genere factisque. Cum his primam periculi procellam parumper sustinuit. Deinde eos  
 10 quoque ipsos exigua parte pontis relictis, revocantibus qui rescindebant, cedere in tutum coegit. Circumferens inde truces minaciter oculos ad proceres Etruscorum nunc singulos provocare, nunc increpare omnes, servitia regum superbiorum, suae libertatis inmemores alienam oppugnatam venire.  
 15 Cunctati aliquamdiu sunt, dum alius alium, ut proelium incipiant, circumspectant. Pudor deinde commovit aciem, et clamore sublato undique in unum hostem<sup>o</sup> tela coniciunt. Quae cum in obiecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, iam impetu  
 20 conabantur detrudere virum, cum simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum, alacritate perfecti operis sublatus, pavore subito impetum sustinuit. Tum Cocles 'Tiberine

1. plus hostium : subj. of fore.

2. monēre : sc. se, i.e., Horatius.

4. vadere, *to go, rush*.

6. cedentium : agrees with pron. understood, depending upon terga. — pugnae is dat. with cedentium. — obstupescere, *to amaze, astound*.

10. revocantibus : sc. pron. in abl.

12. trux, *fierce*. — procer, -eris, *chief, noble*.

13. provocare, increpare : inf. (historical) = indic. Notice that they are "verbs of saying." — servitium = servus. Appos. to subj. of infinit.

14. alienam : note the gender. Sc. what? — How is the supine in -um (oppugnatum) used?

18. quae . . . cuncta : refers to what? — obiecto : i.e., to the enemy.

22. Tiberinus : river-god of the Tiber.

pater,' inquit, 'te precor, haec arma et hunc militem propitio flumine accipias!' Ita armatus in Tiberim desiluit, multisque superincidentibus telis incolumis ad suos tranavit. Grata erga tantam virtutem civitas fuit: statua in comitio posita, agri quantum uno die circumaravit datum.

5

125. *The Making of an Orator.*

Imitetur illum, cui sine dubio summa vis dicendi conceditur, Atheniensem Demosthenem, in quo tantum studium fuisse tantusque labor dicitur, ut primum impedimenta naturae diligentia industriaque superaret; cumque ita balbus esset ut eius ipsius artis, cui studeret, primam litteram non 10 posset dicere, perfecit meditando, ut nemo planius esse locutus putaretur. Deinde cum spiritus eius esset angustior, tantum continenda anima in dicendo est adsecutus, ut una continuatione verborum, id quod eius scripta declarant, binae ei contentiones vocis et remissiones continerentur; 15 qui etiam, ut memoriae proditum est, coniectis in os calculis, summa voce versus multos uno spiritu pronuntiare consuebat; neque is consistens in loco, sed inambulans atque adscensu ingrediens arduo.

1. propitius, *favorable*; cf. Eng. *propitious*.

4. statua, *statue*. — comitium; the level meeting-place of the people adjoining the old forum Romanum.

5. agri limits *quantum*. Tr. as *much* (of) *land as*.

6. imitari: *deponent v.*

9. balbus, *stammering, stuttering*.

11. meditari, *to practice*.

13. tantum . . . ut.

14. continuatio, *continuance, stretch*.

15. contentio, *sustained effort* (in speaking). — remissio, *relaxing, lowering*.

16. calculus, *pebble*.

18. inambulare: *in = to and fro*.



126. *The Opening Spring.*

- Vere fruor semper; semper nitidissimus annus :  
 arbor habet frondes, pabula semper humus.  
 Est mihi fecundus dotalibus hortus in agris;  
 aura foveat, liquidæ fonte rigatur aquæ.  
 5 Hunc meus implevit generoso flore maritus,  
 atque ait, 'Arbitrium tu, dea, floris habet.'  
 Sæpe ego digestos volui numerare colores,  
 nec potui; numero copia maior erat.  
 Roscida cum primum foliis excussa pruina est,  
 10 et variae radiis intepuere comæ,  
 conveniunt pictis incinctæ vestibis Horæ  
 inque leves calathos munera nostra legunt.  
 Protinus accedunt Charites, nectuntque coronas,  
 sartaque caelestes implicitura comas.

127. *An African Oracle.*

- 15 Iamque haud procul oraculi sede aberant, cum complures  
 corvi agmini occurrunt: modico volatu prima signa anteceden-  
 dentes modo humi residebant, cum lentius agmen incederet,  
 modo se pennis levabant ducentium iterque monstrantium  
 ritu. Tandem ad sedem consecratam deo ventum est.  
 20 Incredibile dictu, inter vastas solitudines sita undique

3. dotalis: infer from dos,  
 dotis.

7. digerere, to arrange in order.

9. roscidus: infer from ros,  
 roris, dew.—pruina, hoar-frost.

10. intepescere (-esco), -tepui,  
 to be warmed.

11. incinctæ: in (neg.) + cin-  
 gere.

12. calathus, wicker-basket.

13. Charites = Gratiae.

14. comas: cf. with v. 10.

15. aberant: sc. milites Alexan-  
 dri.

16. prima signa: here used in  
 a military sense.

20. sita (situs, -a, -um, situated)  
 refers to what word in the pre-  
 ceding sentence?

ambientibus ramis vix in densam umbram cadente sole  
 contacta est, multique fontes dulcibus aquis passim manan-  
 tibus alunt silvas. Caeli quoque mira temperies, verno  
 tepori maxime similis, omnes anni partes pari salubritate  
 percurrit. Incolae nemoris, quos Hammonios vocant, di- 5  
 spersis tuguriis habitant : medium nemus pro arce habent,  
 triplici muro circumdatum. Prima munitio tyrannorum vete-  
 rum regiam clausit ; in proxima coniuges eorum cum liberis  
 et paelicibus habitabant ; hic quoque dei oraculum est ;  
 ultima munimenta satellitum armigerorumque sedes erant. 10  
 Est et aliud Hammonis nemus : in medio habet fontem —  
 Solis aquam vocant. Sub lucis ortum tepida manat, medio  
 die, cuius vehementissimus est calor, frigida eadem fluit,  
 inclinato in vesperam calescit, media nocte fervida exae-  
 stuat, quoque nox propius vergit ad lucem, multum ex 15  
 nocturno calore decrescit, donec sub ipsum diei ortum  
 adsueto tepore languescat. Id, quod pro deo colitur, non  
 eandem effigiem habet, quam vulgo diis artifices accommo-  
 daverunt : umbilico maxime similis est habitus, smaragdo  
 et gemmis coagmentatus. Hunc, cum responsum petitur, 20  
 navigio aurato gestant sacerdotes multis argenteis pateris  
 ab utroque navigii latere pendentibus ; sequuntur matronae  
 virginesque patrio more inconditum quoddam carmen canen-  
 tes, quo propitiari Iovem credunt, ut certum edat oraculum.  
 Ac tum quidem regem propius adeuntem maximus natu e 25  
 sacerdotibus ' filium ' appellat, hoc nomen illi parentem

3. caelum, *climate*.

4. tepor, -oris, *warmth*.

7. Prima : cf. triplici muro.

8. proxima : sc. munitione.

11. Hammon, -onis : the *Libyan*  
*Zeus*.

14. inclinato : sc. die.

17. languescere : cf. with exae-  
 stuat (14) and decrescit (16).

19. umbilicus, *navel*. Here =  
 to something resembling the um-  
 bilicus in shape. — habitus, -us,  
*condition*, external or internal :  
 here the former, i.e., *appearance*.  
 — smaragdus, *emerald*.

20. coagmentare, *to join*.

25. regem : i.e., Alexander.

Iovem reddere adfirmans. Ille se vero et accipere ait et agnoscere, humanae sortis oblitus. Consuluit deinde, an totius orbis imperium fatis sibi destinaretur. Vatesque, in adulationem compositus, terrarum omnium rectorem fore  
 5 ostendit. Post haec institit quaerere, an omnes parentis sui interfectores poenas dedissent. Sacerdos parentem eius negat ullius scelere posse violari, Philippi autem omnes luisse supplicia; adiecit, invictum fore, donec excederet ad deos. Sacrificio deinde facto dona et sacerdotibus et deo  
 10 data sunt permissumque amicis, ut ipsi quoque consulerent Iovem. Nihil amplius quaesierunt quam, an auctor esset sibi divinis honoribus colendi suum regem. Hoc quoque acceptum fore Iovi vates respondent.

128. *Tribute to a Great General.*

See p. 52, note to line 11 (Pyrrhus).

Satis constans inter omnes auctores fama est, nullum nec  
 15 eius nec superioris aetatis regem comparandum Pyrrho fuisse, raroque non inter reges tantum, verum etiam inter illustres viros aut vitae sanctioris aut iustitiae probatoris visum fuisse: scientiam certe rei militaris in illo viro tantam fuisse, ut cum Lysimacho, Demetrio, Antigono, tantis  
 20 regibus bella gesserit, invictus semper fuerit: Illyriorum quoque, Siculorum Romanorumque et Karthaginensium bellis nunquam inferior, plerumque etiam victor exstiterit: qui patriam certe suam angustam ignobilemque fama rerum gestarum et claritate nominis sui toto orbe illustrem red-  
 25 diderit.

5. parentis: i.e., Philippus.

8. luere, to pay, suffer.

11. auctor esset sibi, (transl.)  
 he gave authority to them.

14. constans, -ntis, current,  
 commonly believed.

20. invictus: in + vincere.

129. *A Grecian Ghost.*

Erat Athenis spatiosa et capax domus, sed infamis et pestilens. Per silentium noctis sonus ferri, et, si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum longius primo, deinde e proximo reddebatur; mox apparebat idolon, senex macie et squalore confectus, promissa barba, horrenti capillo; cruribus compedes, manibus catenas gerebat quatiebatque. Inde inhabitantibus tristes diraeque noctes per metum vigilabantur; vigiliam morbus et, crescente formidine, mors sequebatur. Nam interdiu quoque, quamquam abscesserat imago, memoria imaginis oculis inerrabat. Deserta inde et damnata solitudine domus totaque illi monstro relicta; proscribatur tamen, seu quis emere, seu quis conducere, ignarus tanti mali vellet. Venit Athenas philosophus Athenodorus, legit titulum, auditoque pretio, quia suspecta vilitas, percunctatus, omnia docetur, ac nihilo minus, immo tanto magis conducit. Ubi coepit advesperascere, iubet sterni sibi prima domus parte; poscit pugillares, stilum, lumen; suos omnes in interiora dimittit; ipse ad scribendum animum, oculos, manum intendit, ne vacua mens audita simulacra et inanes sibi metus fingeret. Initio, quale ubique,

2. ferri: not the verb.

3. longius is balanced by *e proximo* (adv.; sc. loco), and *primo* by *deinde*.

4. idolon (or -um), -i [*εἰδωλον*], apparition, ghost.

5. compes, -pedis, fetter, chain (= catena, -ae).

7. vigilare, to spend in watching, be wakeful.

11. proscribere, to advertise (for rent or sale). Note the force of the imperf.

14. titulus, placard, bill. —

vilitas: infer meaning from vilis, cheap.

16. sterni: notice the voice; what is the subject?

17. pugillares (or -laria), -ium, writing-tablets. [pugillus, handful.] — stilus: a pointed instrument for writing on waxed tablets.

18. in interiora: sc. loca domus. — scribendum: gerund.

19. audita: agrees with what?

20. Initio: look out for histor. infinitives in this sentence with subj. in what c.? — quale, just as.

silentium noctis, dein concuti ferrum, vincula moveri. Ille non tollere oculos, non remittere stilum, sed affirmare animum. Tum crebrescere fragor, adventare, et iam ut in limine, iam ut intra limen audiri. Respicit, videt agnoscitque narratam sibi effigiem. Stabat innuebatque digito, similis vocanti: hic contra, ut paulum expectaret, manu significat rursusque ceris et stilo incumbit. Illa scribentis capiti catenis insonabat: respicit rursus idem, quod prius, innuentem, nec moratus tollit lumen et sequitur. Ibat illa  
 10 lento gradu, quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam deflexit in aream domus, repente dilapsa deserit comitem: desertus herbas et folia concerpta signum loco ponit. Postero die adit magistratus, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catenis et implicata: collecta  
 15 publice sepeliuntur. Domus postea rite conditis manibus caruit.

130. *The Dandy (scurra) and the Rustic.*

Facturus ludos quidam dives nobiles  
 proposito cunctos invitavit praemio,  
 quam quisque posset ut novitatem ostenderet.  
 20 Venere artifices laudis ad certamina;  
 quos inter scurra, notus urbano sale,  
 habere dixit se genus spectaculi,

2. affirmare animum, to screw up one's courage.

5. innuere, to nod to, beckon.

7. cerae, -arum = pugillares [cera, wax].—illa: why fem.?

8. insonare: in (over or above) + sonare. Gov. what c.?—quod prius: sc. innuerat.

10. lentus, slow.—in aream domus, the open court-yard (in the middle of the house).

11. desertus: by what?

12. concerpere [con + carpere], to pluck, gather.

15. condere, to lay (a ghost).

18. proposito: emphasize the prep. in pro + ponere.

19. novitatem, a novelty; = aliquid novi.

21. quos inter = inter quos.—sal, salis, lit. salt; (hence) wit, shrewdness.

quod in theatro nunquam prolatum foret.  
 Dispersus rumor civitatem concitat;  
 paulo ante vacua turbam deficiunt loca.  
 In scaena vero postquam solus constitit  
 sine apparatu, nullis adiutoribus, 5  
 silentium ipsa fecit expectatio.  
 Ille in sinum repente demisit caput  
 et sic porcelli vocem est imitatus sua,  
 verum ut subesse pallio contenderent  
 et excuti iuberent. Quo facto simul 10  
 nihil est repertum, multis onerant laudibus  
 hominemque plausu prosequuntur maximo.  
 Hoc vidit fieri rusticus. 'Non mehercule  
 me vincet,' inquit: et statim professus est  
 idem facturum melius se postridie. 15  
 Fit turba maior. Iam favor mentes tenet,  
 et derisuri, non spectaturi, sedent.  
 Uterque prodit. Scurra degrunnit prior  
 movetque plausus et clamores suscitatur.  
 Tunc simulans sese vestimentis rusticus 20  
 porcellum obtegere — quod faciebat scilicet,  
 sed, in priore quia nil compererat, latens —  
 pervellit aurem vero, quem celaverat,  
 et cum dolore vocem naturae exprimit.  
 Adclamat populus scurram multo similis 25  
 imitatum, et cogit rusticum trudi foras.

7. in sinum: i.e., of the toga.  
 8. porcellus (dim. of porculus,  
 porcus), *little pig*. — sua: sc.  
 what?

9. verum: sc. porcellum.  
 12. prosequi, *to honor*.

13. mehercule, *by Hercules*; of  
 a truth.

18. degrunnire, *to grunt, squeal*  
 loudly.

23. pervellere, *to pull, pinch*.  
 — aurem: of what? — vero: adv.

24. vocem naturae: i.e., a  
 squeal.

26. trudere foras, *to drive out*  
 of doors.

silentium noctis, dein concuti ferrum, vincula moveri. Ille non tollere oculos, non remittere stilum, sed affirmare animum. Tum crebrescere fragor, adventare, et iam ut in limine, iam ut intra limen audiri. Respicit, videt agnoscitque narratam sibi effigiem. Stabat innuebatque digito, similis vocanti : hic contra, ut paulum exspectaret, manu significat rursusque ceris et stilo incumbit. Illa scribentis capiti catenis insonabat : respicit rursus idem, quod prius, innuentem, nec moratus tollit lumen et sequitur. Ibat illa  
 10 lento gradu, quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam deflexit in aream domus, repente dilapsa deserit comitem : desertus herbas et folia concepta signum loco ponit. Postero die adit magistratus, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catenis et implicita : collecta  
 15 publice sepeliuntur. Domus postea rite conditis manibus caruit.

130. *The Dandy (scurra) and the Rustic.*

Facturus ludos quidam dives nobiles proposito cunctos invitavit praemio, quam quisque posset ut novitatem ostenderet.  
 20 Venere artifices laudis ad certamina ; quos inter scurra, notus urbano sale, habere dixit se genus spectaculi,

2. affirmare animum, *to screw up one's courage.*

5. innuere, *to nod to, beckon.*

7. cerae, -arum = pugillares [cera, wax]. — illa : why fem.?

8. insonare : in (*over or above*) + sonare. Gov. what c. ? — quod prius : sc. innuerat.

10. lentus, *slow*. — in aream domus, *the open court-yard* (in the middle of the house).

11. desertus : by what ?

12. concerpere [con + carpere], *to pluck, gather.*

15. condere, *to lay* (a ghost).

18. proposito : emphasize the prep. in pro + ponere.

19. novitatem, *a novelty* ; = aliquid novi.

21. quos inter = inter quos. — sal, salis, lit. salt ; (hence) wit, shrewdness.

quod in theatro nunquam prolatum foret.

Dispersus rumor civitatem concitat ;

paulo ante vacua turbam deficiunt loca.

In scaena vero postquam solus constitit

sine apparatu, nullis adiutoribus,

5

silentium ipsa fecit exspectatio.

Ille in sinum repente demisit caput

et sic porcelli vocem est imitatus sua,

verum ut subesse pallio contenderent

et excuti iuberent. Quo facto simul

10

nihil est repertum, multis onerant laudibus

hominemque plausu prosequuntur maximo.

Hoc vidit fieri rusticus. 'Non mehercule

me vincet,' inquit : et statim professus est

idem facturum melius se postridie.

15

Fit turba maior. Iam favor mentes tenet,

et derisuri, non spectaturi, sedent.

Uterque prodit. Scurra degrunnit prior

movetque plausus et clamores suscitatur.

Tunc simulans sese vestimentis rusticus

20

porcellum obtegere — quod faciebat scilicet,

sed, in priore quia nil compererant, latens —

pervellit aurem vero, quem celaverat,

et cum dolore vocem naturae exprimit.

Adclamat populus scurram multo similis

25

imitatum, et cogit rusticum trudi foras.

7. in sinum : i.e., of the toga.

8. porcellus (dim. of porculus, porcus), *little pig*. — sua : sc. what ?

9. verum : sc. porcellum.

12. prosequi, *to honor*.

13. mehercule, *by Hercules ; of a truth*.

18. degrunnire, *to grunt, squeal loudly*.

23. pervellere, *to pull, pinch*. — aurem : of what ? — vero : adv.

24. vocem naturae : i.e., a *squeal*.

26. trudere foras, *to drive out of doors*.



At ille profert ipsum porcellum e sinu,  
 turpemque aperto pignore errorem probans :  
 'en hic declaret, quales sitis iudices !'

131. *An Oriental Host.*

Patrio more Persarum traditum est orto sole demum  
 5 procedere. Die iam illustri signum e tabernaculo regis  
 bucina dabatur. Super tabernaculum, unde ab omnibus  
 conspici posset, imago solis crystallo inclusa fulgebat. Ordo  
 autem agminis erat talis. Ignis, quem ipsi sacrum et  
 aeternum vocabant, argenteis altaribus praeferebatur. Magi  
 10 proximi patrium carmen caneant. Magos trecenti et sexa-  
 ginta quinque iuvenes sequebantur puniceis amiculis velati,  
 diebus totius anni pares numero : quippe Persis quoque in  
 totidem dies descriptus est annus. Currum deinde Iovi  
 sacratum albentes vehebant equi ; hos oximiae magnitu-  
 15 dinis equus, quem Solis appellabant, sequebatur. Aureae  
 virgae et albae vestes regentes equos adornabant. Haud  
 procul erant vehicula decem multo auro argentoque caelata.  
 Sequebatur haec equitatus duodecim gentium variis armis  
 et moribus. Proximi ibant, quos Persae Immortales vocant,  
 20 ad decem milia. Cultus opulentiae barbarae non alios  
 magis honestabat : illi aureos torques, illi vestem auro  
 distinctam habebant manicatasque tunicas, gemmis etiam  
 adornatas. Exiguo intervallo, quos cognatos regis appel-  
 lant, decem et quinque milia hominum. Haec vero turba,

2. pignus, -oris or -eris =  
 documentum.

6. bucina, *war-trumpet*.

11. puniceus (adj.), *red, purple*.

12. quoque : i.e., like the Ro-  
 mans.

16. regentes : sc. eos (obj.  
 verb).

20. cultus often refers to dress.

21. torquis or torques, -is, *col-  
 lar, necklace*.

22. tunica manicata was a  
 tunica with sleeves (*manicae*,  
 -arum).

muliebriter propemodum culta, luxu magis quam decoris armis conspicua erat. Doryphoroe vocabantur proximum his agmen, soliti vestem excipere regalem : hi currum regis anteibant, quo ipse eminens vehebatur. Utrumque currus latus deorum simulacra ex auro argentoque expressa decora-<sup>5</sup> bant ; distinguebant internitentes gemmae iugum, ex quo eminebant duo aurea simulacra cubitalia, quorum alterum Nini, alterum erat Beli. Inter haec aquilam auream pinnas extendenti similem sacrauerant. Cultus regis inter omnia luxuria notabatur : purpureae tunicae medium album intex-<sup>10</sup> tum erat, pallam auro distinctam aurei accipitres, velut rostris, inter se concurrerent, adornabant et zona aurea muliebriter cinctus acinacem suspenderat, cui ex gemma vagina erat. Cidarim Persae vocabant regium capitis insigne : hoc caerulea fascia albo distincta circumibat.<sup>15</sup> Currum decem milia hastatorum sequebantur : hastas argento exornatas, spicula auro praefixa gestabant. Dextra laevaue regem ducenti ferme nobilissimi propinquorum comitabantur. Horum agmen claudebatur triginta milibus peditum, quos equi regis quadringenti sequebantur. Inter-<sup>20</sup> vallo deinde unius stadii matrem Darei Sisigambim currus vehebat et in alio erat coniunx. Turba feminarum reginas comitantium equis vectabatur. Quindecim deinde, quas

1. decoris from decorus (adj.), not from decus, -oris.

2. doryphoros (-us), -i [δωρυφόρος], lance-bearer. -oe = oi nom. pl.

4. currus : genit. sing.

7. cubitalis (adj.) : infer meaning from cubitum.

8. Ninus : son of Belus (the assumed founder of Babylon), husband of Semiramis and builder of Nineveh.

10. Difference between tegere and texere ?

11. accipiter, -tris, hawk, falcon.

13. acinaces, -is, poniard, dirk.

14. cidaris (or cidar), -aris, tiara, diadem.

15. insigne : adj. = subst. — fascia, band, fillet.

17. spiculum, dart, arrow.

21. Sisigambis, -is.

armamaxas appellabant, sequebantur. In his erant liberi regis et qui educabant eos. Tum regiae paelices trecentae et sexaginta quinque vehebantur, et ipsae regali cultu ornatuque. Post quas pecuniam regis sescenti muli et trecenti 5 cameli vehebant praesidio sagittariorum prosequente. Propinquorum amicorumque coniuges huic agmini proximae lixarumque et calorum greges vehebantur. Ultimi erant cum suis quisque ducibus, qui cogerent agmen, leviter armati.

132. *Pompeius Magnus.*

- 10 Iam vero virtuti Cn. Pompeii quae potest oratio par inveniri? Quid est quod quisquam aut illo dignum aut vobis novum aut cuiquam inauditum possit adferre? Neque enim illae sunt solae virtutes imperatoriae, quae vulgo existimantur, labor in negotiis, fortitudo in periculis, indu-  
15 stria in agendo, celeritas in conficiendo, consilium in providendo: quae tanta sunt in hoc uno, quanta in omnibus reliquis imperatoribus, quos aut vidimus aut audivimus, non fuerunt. Testis est Italia, quam ille ipse victor, L. Sulla, huius virtute et subsidio confessus est liberatam; testis est  
20 Sicilia, quam multis undique cinctam periculis non terrore belli, sed consilii celeritate explicavit; testis est Africa, quae magnis oppressa hostium copiis eorum ipsorum sanguine redundavit; testis est Gallia, per quam legionibus

1. *armamaxa*: a covered Persian vehicle, especially for women.

2. *educare* (not *educere*), to bring up, educate.

8. *cogere agmen*, to bring up the rear.

13. *imperatorius* (adj.).

16. *quae*: refers to what?

18. *L. Sulla* headed the faction opposed to Marius in the Italian Civil War. Pompeius was sent by Sulla into Sicily and Africa to finish the war.

21. *explicare*, to liberate, set to rights.

23. *redundare*, to flow freely.

nostris iter in Hispaniam Gallorum internecione patefactum est; testis est Hispania, quae saepissime plurimos hostes ab hoc superatos prostratosque conspexit; testis est iterum et saepius Italia, quae cum servili bello taetro periculosoque premeretur, ab hoc auxilium absente expetivit: quod bellum expectatione eius attenuatum atque imminutum est, adventu sublatum ac sepultum. Testes nunc vero iam omnes orae atque omnes exterae gentes ac nationes.

133. *The Lord of Creation.*

Unum animantium cunctorum alienis velat opibus. Ceteris sua varie tegimenta tribuit, testas, cortices, spinas, coria, villos, saetas, pillos, plumam, pennas, squamas, vellera; etiam arboresque cortice, interdum gemino, a frigidibus et calore tutata est. Hominem tantum nudum et in nuda humo natali die abicit ad vagitus statim, nullumque tot animalium aliud ad lacrimas, et has protinus vitae principio. Uni animantium luctus est datus, uni luxuria, et quidem innumerabilibus modis, ac per singula membra; uni ambitio, uni avaritia, uni immensa vivendi cupido, uni superstitio, uni sepulturae cura, atque etiam post se de futuro. Nulli

1. *Hispaniam*: whither Pompeius was sent to subdue Sertorius, an old Marian leader. On the way to Gaul P. had to fight the Transalpine Gauls and on his return he cut to pieces some "scattered remnants" of the slave forces, who had revolted under the leadership of the Capuan gladiator, Spartacus.

3. *iterum et saepius*, again and again.

4. *taeter, -tra, -trum*, disgraceful, i.e., because against slaves.

5. *absente*: i.e., in Spain.

6. *attenuare*, to weaken.

7. *tollere* means what besides to raise up, build, etc.?

9. *animans, -ntis*, living creature. — *alienus*, of another. — *velat* (cover): sc. *natura* as subj. of this and following verbs.

10. *testa*, shell. — *spina*: cf. Eng. *spine*.

11. *villus*, shaggy hair. — *saeta*, bristle. — *penna*, wing-feather. — *vellus, -eris*, fleece.

vita fragilior, nulli rerum omnium libido maior, nulli pavor confusior, nulli rabies acrior. Denique cetera animantia in suo genere probe degunt. Congregari videmus et stare contra dissimilia. Leonum feritas inter se non dimicat; 5 serpentium morsus non petit serpentes; ne maris quidem beluae ac pisces, nisi in diversa genera saeviunt. At homini plurima ex homine sunt mala.

134. '*Music hath Charms.*'

Quod mare non novit, quae nescit Ariona tellus?  
Carmine currentes ille tenebat aquas.  
10 Saepe sequens agnam lupus est a voce retentus,  
saepe avidum fugiens restitit agna lupum;  
saepe canes leporesque umbra cubuere sub una,  
et stetit in saxo proxima cerva leae;  
et sine lite loquax cum Palladis alite<sup>c</sup> cornix  
15 sedit, et accipitri iuncta columba fuit.

135. '*Murder will out.*'

Fabulam scripsit Herodotus super fidicine illo Arione. Vetus (inquit) et nobilis Arion cantator fidibus fuit. Eum Arionem rex Corinthi Periander amicum amatumque habuit artis gratia. Is inde a rege proficiscitur, terras inclutas

4. Leonum . . . dimicat =  
leones ferociter . . . dimicant.

7. mala = noun.

8. Ariona: Grk. accus. of  
Arion, -onis: a famous cithara-  
player of Lesbos and friend of  
Periander, "Tyrant" of Corinth.

12. lepus, -oris, a hare.

13. lea (poet. for leaena), lion-  
ess.

14. ales, -itis, bird. The owl  
was sacred to Minerva. — cornix,  
-icis, a crow.

16. fidicen, harper, minstrel. —  
Notice the abrupt changes from  
direct to indirect discourse.

17. fides, -ium (pl.), a stringed  
instrument (lyre, harp, etc.).

18. amatum habuit = past  
tense of verb to love.

Siciliam atque Italiam visere. Ubi eo venit auresque omnium mentesque in utriusque terrae urbibus demulsit, in quaestibus istis et voluptatibus amoribusque hominum fuit. Is tum postea, grandi pecunia et re bona multa copiosus, Corinthum instituit redire, navem igitur et navitas, ut notiores amicioresque sibi, Corinthios delegit. Sed eo Corinthios homine accepto navique in altum provecta, praeda pecuniaeque cupidos, cepisse consilium de necando Arione. Tum illum ibi, perniciem intellecta, pecuniam ceteraque sua, ut haberent, dedisse, vitam modo sibi ut parcerent, oravisse : navitas imperavisse, ut iam statim coram desiliret praeceps in mare. Homo (inquit) ibi territus, spe omni vitae perditam, id unum postea oravit, ut, priusquam mortem oppeteret, induere permetterent sua sibi omnia indumenta et fides capere et canere carmen casus illius sui consolabile. Feros et immanes navitas prolubium tamen audiendi subit ; quod oraverat, impetrat. Atque ibi mox de more cinctus, amictus, ornatus stansque in summae puppis foro, carmen voce sublatissima cantavit. Ad postrema cantus cum fidibus ornatuque omni, sicut stabat canebatque, iecit sese procul in profundum. Navitae, haudquaquam dubitantes, quin perisset, cursum, quem facere coeperant, tenuerunt. Sed novum et mirum et pium facinus contigit. Delphinum repente inter undas adnavisse fluitantique sese

2. demulcēre (-ceo), -si, -multum, *to allure*.

4. grandis : do not transl. *grand*.

5. ut, *as, because*.

6. deligere (-ligo), -legi, -lectum, (not from delegare, or deligare, or diligere).

8. cepisse (and other verbs below) : indir. disc. after "verb of saying" implied in *fabulam scripsit* (l. 16, p. 164).

11. oravisse : sc. conjunc. to connect with *dedisse*.

15. indumentum : infer meaning from *induere*.

16. prolubium, *desire*.

18. cinctus, amictus, ornatus : not nouns.

19. forus, *deck, gangway* (of ship).

20. cantus is genit.

homini subdidisse et dorso super fluctus edito vectavisse incolumique eum corpore et ornatu Taenarum in terram Laconicam devexisse. Tum Arionem prorsus ex eo loco Corinthum petivisse talemque Periandro regi, qualis delphino  
 5 vectus fuerat, inopinanti sese obtulisse eique rem, sicuti acciderat, narravisse. Regem istaec parum credidisse, Arionem, quasi falleret, custodiri iussisse, navitas inquisitos, ablegato Arione, dissimulanter interrogasse, ecquid audissent in his locis, unde venissent, super Arione? eos dixisse,  
 10 hominem, cum inde irent, in terra Italia fuisse eumque illic bene agitare et studiis delectationibusque urbium florere atque in gratia pecuniaque magna opulentum fortunatumque esse. Tum inter haec eorum verba Arionem cum fidibus et indumentis, cum quibus se in salum eiacularat, exstitisse,  
 15 navitas stupefactos convictosque ire infitias non quisse.

136. *Alexander's Favorite.*

Alexander postero die praemittit ad captivas, qui nuntiarent, ipsum venire, inhibitaque comitantium turba tabernaculum cum Hephaestione intrat. Is longe omnium amicorum carissimus erat regi, cum ipso pariter eductus, secretorum  
 20 omnium arbiter; libertatis quoque in admonendo eo non alius magis ius habebat, quod tamen ita usurpabat, ut magis a rege permissum, quam vindicatum ab eo videretur: et sicut aetate par erat regi, ita corporis habitu praestabat.

2. Taenarus (-os) and Taenarum: town of Laconia.

4. talem: i.e., in the same dress, etc. . . . qualis.

8. ablegare, *to remove*.

14. salum (poet.) = mare.

15. ire infitias, *to deny*.

16. qui: sc. the antecedent.

17. tabernaculum: i.e., containing the wife (Statira), the mother (Sisigambis), and the daughters of Dareus, whom A. had captured at Issus.

18. Hephaestio, -onis: a favorite general of Alexander the Great.

Ergo reginae illum esse regem ratae suo more veneratae sunt. Inde ex captivis, quis Alexander esset, monstrantibus Sisigambis advoluta est pedibus eius, ignorationem nunquam antea visi regis excusans. Quam manu adlevans rex, 'Non errasti,' inquit, 'mater, nam et hic Alexander est.'

5

137. *Tempus fugit.*

Quamquam, o dii boni! quid est in hominis vita diu? Da enim supremum tempus. Expectemus Tartessorum regis aetatem: fuit enim, ut scriptum video, Arganthonius quidam Gadibus, qui octoginta regnaverat annos, centum viginti vixerat. Sed mihi ne diuturnum quidem quidquam videtur, in quo est aliquid extremum. Cum enim id advenit, tum illud, quod praeteriit, effluxit: tantum remanet, quod virtute et recte factis consecutus sis. Horae quidem cedunt et dies et menses et anni, nec praeteritum tempus unquam revertitur, nec, quid sequatur, sciri potest. Quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eo debet esse contentus. Breve enim tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum. Sin processerit longius, non magis dolendum est, quam agricolae dolent, praeterita verni temporis suavitate, aestatem autumnumque venisse. Ver enim tanquam adulescentiam significat ostenditque fructus futuros: reliqua

1. reginae: the royal women above mentioned.

4. regis: object. gen. depending on ignorationem (i.e., of Sisigambis).

5. mater: term of respect. — et = etiam.

6. quamquam, and yet.

7. Da . . . tempus: grant that one live to (or have) the utmost limit of life. — Tartessii: people

of Tartessus, an ancient town and region of southern Spain, of which region Gades (-ium), the modern Cadiz, became the best-known city. Arganthonius was king of Tartessus in the 6th century B.C.

8. scriptum: as told by Herodotus.

16. temporis depends on quod.

18. processerit: sc. aetas.

19. suavitas, agreeableness.



tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis accommodata sunt. Fructus autem senectutis est, ut saepe dixi, ante partorum bonorum memoria et copia. Omnia autem, quae secundum naturam fiunt, sunt habenda in bonis.

138. *Why Alcibiades would not play the Flute.*

5 Alcibiades Atheniensis, cum apud avunculum Periclen  
puer artibus ac disciplinis liberalibus erudiretur et arcessi  
Pericles Antigenidam tibicinem iussisset, ut eum canere  
tibiis, quod honestissimum tum videbatur, doceret, traditas  
sibi tibiae, cum ad os adhibuisset inflassetque, pudefactus  
10 oris deformitate, abiecit infregitque. Ea res cum percre-  
buisset, omnium tum Atheniensium consensu disciplina  
tibiis canendi desita est.

139. *Be yourself.*

Pavo ad Iunonem venit indigne ferens,  
cantus luscini quod sibi non tribuerit ;  
15 illum esse cunctis avibus admirabilem,  
se derideri, simul ac vocem miserit.  
Tunc consolandi gratia dixit dea :  
' Sed forma vincis, vincis magnitudine ;  
nitor smaragdi collo prae fulget tuo  
20 pictisque plumis gemmeam caudam explicas.'

4. *secundum* is preposition.

5. *Pericles*, -is and -i : the celebrated Athenian statesman.

6. *puer* : appos. = adv. time.

7. *Antigenidas*, -ae : a tibicen, player on the flute (tibia, -ae, often written *tibiae*, -arum).

9. *pudefactus*, *ashamed*.

13. *ad Iunonem* : the peacock was sacred to Iuno.

14. *luscinius* (also -ia), *the nightingale*.

15. *illum esse* : why inf. and acc. ? depends on what ?

16. *simul ac*, *as soon as*. — *vocem mittere* = *canere*.

20. *gemmeus*, *brilliant*. — *explicare*, *to spread out*.

‘Quo mi,’ inquit, ‘mutam speciem, si vincor sono?’  
 ‘Fatorum arbitrio partes sunt vobis datae :  
 tibi forma, vires aquilae, lusciniò melos,  
 augurium corvo, laeva cornici omina,  
 omnesque propriis sunt contentae dotibus.’

5

140. *An Old-time Roman.*

For historical note see No. 74.

Sed omnes patricios plebeiosque nobilissimarum familia-  
 rum M. Porcius Cato longe anteibat. In hoc viro tanta vis  
 animi, ingeniique fuit, ut quocumque loco natus esset,  
 fortunam sibi ipse facturus fuisse videretur. Nulla ars  
 neque privatae neque publicae rei gerendae ei defuit; urba- 10  
 nas rusticasque res pariter callebat. Ad summos honores  
 alios scientia iuris, alios eloquentia, alios gloria militaris  
 provexit; huic versatile ingenium sic pariter ad omnia fuit,  
 ut natum ad id unum diceres, quodcumque ageret. In bello  
 manu fortissimus multisque insignibus clarus pugnis: idem 15  
 postquam ad magnos honores pervenit, summus imperator;  
 idem in pace, si ius consuleres, peritissimus, si causa oranda  
 esset, eloquentissimus. Vivit immo vigetque eloquentia  
 eius sacrata scriptis omnis generis. Orationes et pro se  
 multae et pro aliis et in alios. Nam non solum accusando, sed 20  
 etiam causam dicendo fatigavit inimicos. Simultates nimio  
 plures et exercuerunt eum et ipse exercuit eas; nec facile  
 dixeris, utrum magis presserit eum nobilitas, an ille agitave-  
 rit nobilitatem. Asperi procul dubio animi et linguae acerbae  
 et immodice liberae fuit, sed invicti a cupiditatibus animi 25  
 et rigidae innocentiae, contemptor gratiae et divitiarum.

4. *laevus*, (here) *lucky*.5. *dos* in pl. = *natural gifts*.11. *callere* (*calleo*), *to know*  
*well*.21. *simultas*, *dissension, rivalry*.24. *procul dubio*, *without* (lit.  
*far from*) *doubt*.

141. *A Remarkable Linguist.*

For historical note see No. 6.

Quintus Ennius tria corda habere sese dicebat, quod loqui Graece et Osce et Latine sciret. Mithridates autem, Ponti atque Bithyniae rex inclutus, qui a Cn. Pompeio bello superatus est, duarum et viginti gentium, quas sub dicione habuit, linguas percalluit earumque omnium gentium viris haud umquam per interpretem conlocutus est, sed, ut quemque ab eo appellari usus fuit, proinde lingua et oratione ipsius non minus scite, quam si gentilis eius esset, locutus est.

142. *A Miraculous Cure.*

Barbari veneno tinxerant gladios. Itaque saucii subinde exspirabant nec causa tam strenuae mortis excogitari poterat a medicis, cum etiam leves plagae insanabiles essent. Barbari autem speraverant incautum et temerarium regem excipi posse. Et forte inter promptissimos dimicans intactus evaserat. Praecipue Ptolemaeus, laevo humero leviter quidem saucius, sed maiore periculo quam vulnere adfectus, regis sollicitudinem in se converterat. Quippe non levior illis Ptolemaei fuit cura, quam regis. Qui et proelio et sollicitudine fatigatus cum Ptolemaeo adsideret, lectum, in quo ipse adquiesceret, iussit inferri. In quem ut se recepit, protinus altior insecutus est somnus. Ex quo excitatus per quietem vidisse se exponit speciem draconis oblatam, herbam ferentis ore, quam veneni remedium esse monstrasset: colorem quoque herbae referebat, agniturum,

1. loqui Graece, *to speak Greek.*  
(Graece, adv.)

7. usus, -us, *need.*

8. scite: adv.

10. strenuus, *prompt.*

14. Ptolemaeus (Eng. *Ptolemy*):  
a friend of Alexander. He afterwards became King of Egypt.

17. illis: sc. Macedonibus.

21. exponere = dicere.

si quis repperisset, adfirmans. Inventam deinde — quippe a multis simul erat requisita — vulneri inposuit protinusque dolore finito intra breve spatium cicatrix quoque obducta est.

### 143. *Cyrus the Younger.*

Cyrus the Younger was killed at Cunaxa in revolt against the rule of his brother, Artaxerxes Mnemon. The story is told by Xenophon in the *Anabasis*.

Socrates in eo libro loquitur cum Critobulo Cyrum minorem, Persarum regem praestantem ingenio atque imperii gloria, cum Lysander Lacedaemonius vir summae virtutis venisset ad eum Sardes eique dona a sociis attulisset, et ceteris rebus comem erga Lysandrum atque humanum fuisse et ei quendam consaeptum agrum diligenter consitum ostendisse. Cum autem admiraretur Lysander et proceritates arborum et humum subactam atque puram et suavitatem odorum qui adflarentur ex floribus, tum eum dixisse mirari se non modo diligentiam, sed etiam sollertiam eius a quo essent illa dimensa atque descripta, et Cyrum respon-

4. in eo libro: i.e., the *Oeconomicus* of Xenophon. — *Cyrum* . . . fuisse: orat. obl. after loquitur.

5. *Persarum regem* = *prince*. Cyrus was never king.

6. *Lysander*: the great Spartan general who defeated the Athenians in the Peloponnesian War at *Ægospotami* and thus brought the great struggle to an end. He was helped greatly by Cyrus, who placed a large amount of treasure at his disposal.

7. *Sardes*: limit of motion.

*Sardes* was the capital city of *Lydia*, in *Asia Minor*.

8. *comis*, *kind*.

9. *conserere* (-sero), -sevi, -sistum or -satum.

10. *proceritates arborum*: either = *proceras arbores*, or is a plur. having regard to the great height of the individual trees.

11. *puram*, *free* (from weeds, etc.).

12. *odor*, -oris. — *eum*: which speaker?

14. *describere*, to mark off, arrange.

disse: 'Atqui ego ista sum omnia dimensus, mei sunt ordines, mea descriptio; multae etiam istarum arborum mea manu sunt satae.' Tum Lysandrum intuentem purpuram eius et nitorem corporis ornatumque Persicum multo auro multisque gemmis dixisse: 'Recte vero te, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtuti tuae fortuna coniuncta est.'

144. *The Exile's Last Night in Rome.*

In the year 8 A.D. the poet Ovid, the author of the following lines, was suddenly banished by Augustus (for some reason never cleared up, but believed to be of a personal character) to Tomi, a desolate place on the Black Sea. The banishment came to the poet like a thunder-clap out of a clear sky.

- Cum subit illius tristissima noctis imago,  
 qua mihi supremum tempus in urbe fuit,  
 cum repeto noctem, qua tot mihi cara reliqui,  
 10       labitur ex oculis nunc quoque gutta meis.  
 Iam prope lux aderat, qua me discedere Caesar  
       finibus extremae iusserat Ausoniae.  
 Nec spatium fuerat, nec mens satis apta parandi;  
       torpuerant longa pectora nostra mora.  
 15       Non mihi servorum, comitis non cura legendi,  
       non aptae profugo vestis opisve fuit.  
 Non aliter stupui, quam qui Iovis ignibus ictus  
       vivit et est vitae nescius ipse suae.

7. *tristissima* logically modifies *noctis*.

10. *nunc quoque*: Ovid was writing at Tomi.—*gutta*, *tear-drop*. Remember the Roman tendency to use such words collectively.

11. *lux* = what?—Caesar is, of course, Augustus.

12. *extremae*: logically modifies what?—Ausonia here = Italia. The name Ausones was

apparently applied at a very early period to the people of the lower half of Italia.

13. *spatium*: sc. *temporis mihi*.

14. *torpescere* (-pesco), -pui, *to become listless*.—*mora*: sc. *temporis*, *space of time*, *previous years*, when no thought of trouble came.

16. *vestis opisve*: sc. *legendae*.

Ut tamen hanc animi nubem dolor ipse removit,  
 et tandem sensus convaluere mei,  
 adloquor extremum maestos abiturus amicos,  
 qui modo de multis unus et alter erant.  
 Uxor amans flentem flens acrius ipsa tenebat, 5  
 imbre per indignas usque cadente genas.  
 Nata procul Libycis aberat diversa sub oris,  
 nec poterat fati certior esse mei.  
 Quocumque aspiceres, luctus gemitusque sonabant,  
 formaque non taciti funeris intus erat. 10  
 Femina virque meo, pueri quoque, funere maerent:  
 inque domo lacrimas angulus omnis habet.  
 Iamque morae spatium nox praecipitata negabat,  
 versaque ab axe suo Parrhasis arctos erat.  
 Quid facerem? blando patriae retinebar amore, 15  
 ultima sed iussae nox erat illa fugae.  
 Ter limen tetigi, ter sum revocatus, et ipse  
 indulgens animo pes mihi tardus erat.  
 Saepe 'Vale' dicto rursus sum multa locutus,  
 et quasi discedens oscula summa dedi. 20  
 Saepe eadem mandata dedi, meque ipse fefelli,  
 respiciens oculis pignora cara meis.  
 Dum loquor et flemus, caelo nitidissimus alto,  
 stella gravis nobis, Lucifer ortus erat.

3. *extremum*: adv.

5. *flentem*: sc. what?

6. *gena*, cheek.

7. *nata*: a daughter had married and gone to Africa. — *diversa*: she would now be farther than ever from him.

11. *femina virque*: the amici of vv. 3, 4, or his wife and himself. — *pueri* were probably slaves.

13. *praecipitare*, (here) to bring to an end (i.e., by Aurora).

14. *Parrhasis arctos* (fem.), the Great Bear, the north pole.

17. *revocatus*: because he had stumbled—an inauspicious omen.

19. *dicto*: not a noun.

21. *me . . . fefelli*: i.e., he was beside himself.

145. *Immortal Salamis!*

Athenienses post pugnam Marathoniam, praemonente Themistocle victoriam illam de Persis non finem, sed causam maioris belli fore, cc naves fabricaverunt. Adventante igitur Xerxe — consulentibus Delphis oraculum responsum fuerat, 5 salutem muris ligneis tuerentur — Themistocles, navium praesidium demonstratum ratus, persuadet omnibus, patriam municipes esse, non moenia, civitatemque non in aedificiis, sed in civibus positam : itaque melius salutem navibus quam urbi commissuros ; huius sententiae etiam deum auctorem 10 esse. Probato consilio coniuges liberosque cum pretiosissimis rebus abditis insulis relictis urbe demandant ; ipsi naves armati conscendunt. Exemplum Atheniensium et aliae urbes imitatae. Itaque cum adunata omnis sociorum classis et intenta in bellum navale esset angustiasque Salaminii 15 freti, ne circumveniri a multitudine possent, occupassent, dissensio inter civitatum principes oritur : qui cum deserto bello ad sua tuenda dilabi vellent, timens Themistocles, ne discessu sociorum vires minuerentur, per servum fidum Xerxi nuntiat, uno in loco eum contractam Graeciam capere 20 facillime posse. Quod si civitates, quae iam abire vellent, dissipentur, maiore labore ei singulas consecutandas. Hoc dolo impellit regem signum pugnae dare. Graeci quoque adventu hostium occupati proelium conlatis viribus capessunt.

Interea rex velut spectator pugnae cum parte navium in 25 litore remanet. Artemisia autem, regina Halicarnasi, quae

1. praemonente : prefix is emphatic.

4. Delphis : locative.

7. municeps, ipis = civis.

9. deum : Apollo speaking at Delphi.

11. demandare, to entrust.

13. adunare = coniungere.

14. Salaminus : adj. The island

of Salamis lies between the isthmus of Corinth and Attica. Hence *fretum*, strait.

17. dilabi (-labor), to disperse.

24. spectator : Xerxes had erected upon the shore a lofty throne from which he viewed the battle.

in auxilium Xerxi venerat, inter primos duces bellum acerrime ciebat; quippe ut in viro muliebrem timorem, ita in muliere virilem audaciam cerneret. Cum anceps proelium esset, Iones iuxta praeceptum Themistoclis pugnae se paulatim subtrahere coeperunt: quorum defectio animos ceterorum fregit. Itaque circumspicientes fugam pelluntur Persae et mox proelio victi in fugam vertuntur. In qua trepidatione multae captae naves, multae mersae; plures tamen non minus saevitiam regis quam hostem timentes domum dilabuntur.

146. *Xantippe a Blessing in Disguise.*

Xantippe, Socratis philosophi uxor, morosa admodum fuisse fertur et iurgiosa, irarumque et molestiarum muliebrium per diem perque noctem scatebat. Has eius intemperies in maritum Alcibiades demiratus, interrogavit Socraten, quoniam ratio esset, cur mulierem tam acerbam domo non exigeret. 'Quoniam,' inquit Socrates, 'cum illam domi talem perpetior, insuesco et exerceor, ut ceterorum quoque foris petulantiam et iniuriam facilius feram.'

147. *The Fall of Tyre.*

Ancient Tyre (Tyrus or -os), the most famous city of Phoenicia, lay partly on the mainland and partly on an island, having a circumference of two and three-quarter miles. This island was turned temporarily into a peninsula by the mole or dyke which Alexander built to facilitate his siege of the place.

Biduo deinde ad quietem dato militibus iussisque et classem et machinas pariter admoveere, ut undique territis

3. cerneret: potential.

4. Iones, -um, Ionians (allies of Xerxes).

8. mergere (mergo), -si, -sum, to sink.

12. iurgiosus: infer from suffix and iurgare, to quarrel.

13. scatere, to be full of.

14. intemperies, -ei, outrageous conduct.

17. perpeti (-petior): per + patior.

18. foris (adv.), from home, abroad.



instaret, ipse in altissimam turrem ascendit ingenti animo, periculo maiore : quippe regio insigni et armis fulgentibus conspicuus unus praecipue telis petebatur. Et digna prorsus spectaculo edidit : multos e muris propugnantes hasta  
 5 transfixit, quosdam etiam comminus gladio clipeoque impulsos praecipitavit, quippe turris, ex qua dimicabat, muris hostium propemodum cohaerebat. Iamque crebris arietibus saxorum compage laxata munimenta defecerant et classis intraverat portum et quidam Macedonum in turres hostium  
 10 desertas evaserant. Cum Tyrii, tot simul malis victi, alii supplices in templa confugiunt, alii foribus aedium obseratis occupant liberum mortis arbitrium, nonnulli ruunt in hostem haud inulti tamen perituri, magna pars summa tectorum obtinebat, saxa et, quidquid fors in manus dederat, ingeren-  
 15 tes subeuntibus. Alexander exceptis, qui in templa confugerant, omnes interfici ignemque tectis inici iubet. His per praecones pronuntiatis nemo tamen armatus opem a dis petere sustinuit : pueri virginesque templa compleverant, viri in vestibulo suarum quisque aedium stabant, parata  
 20 saevientibus turba. Multis tamen saluti fuere Sidonii, qui intra Macedonum praesidia erant. Hi urbem quidem inter victores intraverant, sed cognationis cum Tyriis memores — quippe utramque urbem Agenorem condidisse credebant — multos Tyriorum, clam protegentes, ad sua perduxere navi-  
 25 gia, quibus occultati Sidona devecti sunt. xv milia hoc furto subducta saevitiae sunt. Quantumque sanguinis fusum sit, vel ex hoc aestimari potest, quod intra munimenta urbis

3. prorsus, *certainly, truly.*

8. compages, *structure.*

11. obserare, *to bar, fasten.*  
 (obserere = *to sow*, etc.)

17. pronuntiare : NOT here =  
*to pronounce.*

18. sustinere, *to venture, to have the heart to.*

20. Sidonii, -orum, *people of Sidon (-onis), at one time one of the greatest cities of Phoenicia and a rival of Tyre.*

23. Agenor, -oris.

26. saevitiae : transl. by *from*.  
 Why dat. ?

27. vel, *surely.*

VI milia armatorum trucidata sunt. Triste deinde spectaculum victoribus ira praebuit regis. II milia, in quibus occidendis defecerat rabies, crucibus adfixi per ingens litoris spatium pependerunt.

148. *An Eclipse of the Moon.*

C. Sulpicius Gallus served during the Macedonian War under L. Aemilius Paulus. He was **tribunus militum** in B.C. 168, consul in 166. He was not only a soldier, but was a great Greek scholar and one of the distinguished literary men of his time.

Castris permunitis, C. Sulpicius Gallus, tribunus, militum 5  
secundae legionis, qui praetor superiore anno fuerat, consulis  
permissu ad contionem militibus vocatis, pronuntiavit, nocte  
proxima, ne quis id pro portento acciperet, ab hora secunda  
usque ad quartam horam noctis lunam defecturam esse. Id,  
quia naturali ordine statis temporibus fiat, et sciri ante et 10  
praedici posse. Itaque quemadmodum, quia certi solis  
lunaeque et ortus et occasus sint, nunc pleno orbe, nunc  
senescentem exiguo cornu fulgere lunam non mirarentur, ita  
ne obscurari quidem, cum condatur umbra terrae, trahere in  
prodigium debere. Nocte, quam pridie nonas Septembres 15  
insecuta est dies, edita hora cum luna defecisset, Romanis  
militibus Galli sapientia prope divina videri; Macedonas ut  
triste prodigium, occasum regni perniciemque gentis por-  
tendens, movit, nec aliter vates. Clamor ululatusque in  
castris Macedonum fuit, donec luna in suam lucem emer- 20  
sit.

7. **pronuntiavit**: notice the indir. disc. in the following sentences.

8. **portentum**: *omen, portent* (of evil).

9. **deficere** (of sun or moon): *to be eclipsed, lit. to fail.*

11. **quemadmodum, as**; correlative with ita (13).—certi does not agree with solis.

15. **prodigium**: see **portentum** in 8.

19. **ululatus, -us, howling.**

149. *Personality in the Orator.*

Aeschines was a celebrated Athenian rival of Demosthenes. Ctesiphon having proposed that the services of D. to the state should be recognized by the gift of a golden crown, Aeschines (B.C. 330) instituted legal proceedings against Ctesiphon — really, however, against Demosthenes. The oration of Aeschines against C. and that of Demosthenes in his defense (the "oration on the crown") are extant. Aeschines, unable to bear the sting of defeat, retired to Asia Minor and ultimately to Rhodes (-i), where he founded a famous school of oratory.

Actio in dicendo una dominatur. Sine hac summus orator esse in numero nullo potest, mediocris hac instructus summos saepe superare. Huic primas dedisse Demosthenes dicitur, cum rogaretur quid in dicendo esset primum; huic  
5 secundas, huic tertias. Quo mihi melius etiam illud ab Aeschine dictum videri solet; qui cum propter ignominiam iudicii cessisset Athenis et se Rhodum contulisset, rogatus a Rhodiis legisse fertur orationem illam egregiam, quam in Ctesiphontem contra Demosthenem dixerat; qua perlecta  
10 est petitum ab eo postridie, ut legeret illam etiam, quae erat contra a Demosthene pro Ctesiphonte edita. Quam cum suavissima et maxima voce legisset admirantibus omnibus: 'Quanto,' inquit, 'magis miraremini, si audissetis ipsum!'

150. *The Poet's Belief in his Literary Immortality.*

These are the closing words of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

15 Iamque opus exegi, quod nec Iovis ira nec ignis  
nec poterit ferrum nec edax abolere vetustas.

1. unus means what besides  
one?

2. mediocris: sc. orator.

3. primas: sc. partes, first  
place or function.

5. quo: with comparative.

8. Rhodii, -orum, Rhodians.

15. Iovis ira = fulmen.

16. edax: infer from edere, to  
eat, consume.

Cum volet, illa dies, quae nil, nisi corporis huius,  
 ius habet, incerti spatium mihi finiat aevi :  
 parte tamen meliore mei super alta perennis  
 astra ferar, nomenque erit indelebile nostrum.  
 Quaque patet domitis Romana potentia terris,  
 ore legar populi, perque omnia saecula fama,  
 si quid habent veri vatum praesagia, vivam.

5

151. *A Roman Abstainer.*

Romulum dicunt, ad cenam vocatum, ibi non multum  
 bibisse, quia postridie negotium haberet. Ei dicunt : 'Ro-  
 mule, si istud omnes homines faciant, vinum vilius sit.' 10  
 His respondit : 'Immo vero carum, si, quantum quisque  
 volet, bibat ; nam ego bibi, quantum volui.'

152. *Despise Riches !*

Quam ob rem pecuniae fugienda cupiditas. Nihil enim  
 est tam angusti animi tamque parvi, quam amare divitias :  
 nihil honestius magnificentiusque, quam pecuniam contem- 15  
 nere, si non habeas ; si habeas, ad beneficentiam liberalita-  
 temque conferre. Cavenda etiam est gloriae cupiditas, ut  
 supra dixi, eripit enim libertatem, pro qua magnanimis viris  
 omnis debet esse contentio. Nec vero imperia expetenda,  
 ac potius aut non accipienda interdum, aut deponenda 20  
 nonnunquam.

1. cum volet, *whenever it wishes*  
 (dies is personified). — nil is ad-  
 verb. accus. — corporis depends on  
 ius sc.

2. ius : sc. hominis or homi-  
 num. Ovid doubtless here refers  
 to himself.

3. parte tamen m. refers to  
 Ovid's poetic immortality.

7. veri : depends on quid. —

Notice that vates, the poet-seer  
 (not poëta), is used here. — prae-  
 sagium, *presentiment* ; cf. Eng.  
*presage*.

11. immo vero, *nay, but*. —  
 carus : a play on words is intend-  
 ed ; carus = *dear*, i.e., *costly*  
 (mercantile term), and also *es-  
 teemed*.

13. fugienda : sc. what ?

153. *Two Great Kings in Battle.*

Duo reges iunctis prope agminibus proelium accenderant. Plures Persae cadebant, par ferme utrimque numerus vulnerabatur. Curru Dareus, Alexander equo vehebatur: utrumque delecti tuebantur sui inmemores, quippe amisso  
 5 rege nec volebant salvi esse nec poterant. Ante oculos sui quisque regis mortem occumbere ducebat egregium. Maximum tamen periculum adibant, quos maxime tuebantur; quippe sibi quisque caesi regis expetebat decus. Ceterum, sive illud ludibrium oculorum sive vera species fuit, qui  
 10 circa Alexandrum erant, vidisse se crediderunt paulum super caput regis placide volantem aquilam, non sono armorum, non gemitu morientium territam, diuque circa equum Alexandri pendenti magis, quam volanti similis apparuit. Certe vates Aristander alba veste indutus et dextra praefere  
 15 rens lauream militibus in pugnam intentis avem monstrabat, haud dubium victoriae auspicium. Ingens ergo alacritas et fiducia paulo ante territos accendit ad pugnam, utique postquam auriga Darei, qui ante ipsum sedens equos regebat, hasta transfixus est. Nec aut Persae aut Macedones  
 20 dubitavere, quin ipse rex esset occisus. Ergo lugubri ululatu et incondito clamore gemituque totam fere aciem adhuc aequo Marte pugnantium turbavere cognati Darei et armigeri, laevumque cornu in fugam effusum destituerat currum, quem a dextra parte stipati in medium agmen  
 25 receperunt. Dicitur acinace stricto Dareus dubitasse, an fugae dedecus honesta morte vitaret, sed eminens curru nondum omnem suorum aciem proelio excedentem destituere erubescibat, dumque inter spem et desperationem

1. duo reges: Alexander the Great, and Dareus, King of Persia, at the battle of Arbela.

17. utique, especially.

22. aequo Marte pugnare, to fight on even terms.

27. nondum: modifies excedentem.

haesitat, sensim Persae cedebant et laxaverant ordines. Alexander mutato equo, quippe plures fatigaverat, resistentium adversa ora fodiebat, fugientium terga. Iamque non pugna, sed caedes erat, cum Dareus quoque currum suum in fugam vertit. Haerebat in tergis fugientium victor, 5 sed prospectum oculorum nubes pulveris, quae ad caelum efferebatur, abstulerat: ergo haud secus quam in tenebris errabant, ad sonum notae vocis, aut signum, subinde coeuntes. Exaudiebant tamen strepitus habenarum, quibus equi currum vehementes identidem verberabantur. Haec sola fugientis 10 vestigia excepta sunt.

154. *Epaminondas' Last Fight.*

Epaminondas was a great Theban statesman and general, the hero of Leuctra in Boeotia where the Thebans defeated the Lacedaemonians. In B.C. 362 Epaminondas perished at Mantinea in victorious battle against the combined forces of Athens and Sparta.

Hic extremo tempore imperator apud Mantineam cum acie instructa audacius instaret hostibus, cognitus a Lacedaemoniis, quod in unius perniciem eius patriae sitam putabant salutem, universi in unum impetum fecerunt neque 15 prius abscesserunt, quam magna caede multisque occisis fortissime ipsum Epaminondam pugnantem, sparo eminus percutsum, concidere viderunt. Huius casu aliquantum retardati sunt Boeotii, neque tamen prius pugna excesserunt, quam repugnantes profligarunt. At Epaminondas, cum 20

1. sensim, *gradually*.

3. fodere (-io), *to stab, pierce*.

12. Hic: i.e., Epaminondas. — extremo tempore: i.e., of his life. — cum: conjunc.

13. cognitus = et cognitus esset.

14. sitam: sc. esse.

15. universi . . . abscesserunt: the main clause. The

sentence is awkwardly constructed.

16. prius: what is to remember in translating prius (or ante) when not written as one word with quam?

17. sparum or -us, *spear, lance*. — eminus, *from a distance*.

20. repugnantes = subst. in accus. c.

animadverteret mortiferum se vulnus accepisse simulque, si ferrum, quod ex hastili in corpore remanserat, extraxisset, animam statim emissurum, usque eo retinuit, quoad renuntiatum est vicisse Boeotios. Id postquam audivit, 'Satis,' 5 inquit, 'vixi: invictus enim morior.' Tum ferro extracto confestim exanimatus est.

155. *The Enchantress Circe.*

Adspirant aerae in noctem nec candida cursus  
Luna negat, splendet tremulo sub lumine pontus.  
Proxima Circaeae raduntur litora terrae,  
10 dives inaccessos ubi Solis filia lucos  
assiduo resonat cantu tectisque superbis  
urit odoratam nocturna in lumina cedrum,  
arguto tenuis percurrens pectine telas.  
Hinc exaudiri gemitus iraeque leonum  
15 vincla recusantum et sera sub nocte rudentum,  
saetigerique sues atque in praesaepibus ursi  
saevire ac formae magnorum ululare luporum,  
quos hominum ex facie dea saeva potentibus herbis  
induerat Circe in vultus ac terga ferarum.

1. animadvertere: followed by  
orat. obliq. — mortifer, -fera,  
-ferum.

3. emissurum: sc. what as sub-  
ject?

7. in, on into. — cursus: to the  
Trojans, now on the sea.

9. Circaeae (Circé), Circe's. The  
promontory of Circeium on the  
coast of Latium is meant. — ra-  
dere (naut. t.), to skirt, sail close  
past.

10. Solis filia: i.e., Circe.

11. resonare, (here) to cause to  
resound.

13. arguto . . . pectine (pec-  
ten, -inis), with whirring reed  
(of the weaver's loom). — tela,  
warp: weaver's loom.

14. exaudiri: historical infinitive.  
Notice the following verbs. —  
gemitus iraeque = gemitus irati.

15. rudere (rudo), to roar.

16. saetiger, -gera, -gerum:  
infer meaning by analysis.

19. terga = corpora.





157. *How C. Mucius lost his Hand, but won a Name.*

Read note introductory to No. 124.

Sedendo expugnaturum se urbem spem Porsena habebat, cum C. Mucius adulescens nobilis, magno audacique facinore eam indignitatem vindicandam ratus, primo sua sponte penetrare in hostium castra constituit. Dein, metuens ne,  
5 si consulum iniussu et ignaris omnibus iret, forte deprehensus a custodibus Romanis retraheretur ut transfuga, senatum adit.

‘Transire Tiberim,’ inquit, ‘patres, et intrare, si possim, castra hostium volo, non praedo nec populationum ultor:  
10 maius, si di iuvant, in animo est facinus.’ Approbant patres. Abdito intra vestem ferro proficiscitur. Ubi eo venit, in confertissima turba prope regium tribunal constitit. Ibi cum stipendium militibus forte daretur, et scribe, cum rege sedens pari fere ornatu, multa ageret, cum milites  
15 vulgo adirent, timens sciscitari, uter Porsena esset, ne ignorando regem semet ipse aperiret quis esset, scribam pro rege obtruncat. Vadentem inde, qua per trepidam turbam cruento mucrone sibi ipse fecerat viam, cum concursu ad clamorem facto comprehensum regii satellites retraxissent,  
20 ante tribunal regis destitutus, tum quoque inter tantas fortunae minas metuendus magis quam metuens, ‘Romanus sum,’ inquit, ‘civis; C. Mucium vocant. Hostis hostem occidere volui nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi; longus post me ordo est idem petentium decus. Proinde in hoc

1. sedendo: abl. gerund: sedere, to remain encamped.—expugnaturum: sc. esse (after spem habebat = sperabat).

3. indignitatem: i.e., that Rome was besieged.

5. deprehendere, to catch, discover. Cf. apprehendere and Eng. apprehend.

11. ferrum = gladius.

13. stipendium, pay (of soldier).—scribe, clerk.

15. ignorando regem: transl. because of his inability to recognize the king.

17. vadentem: sc. eum.

24. petentium: sc. virorum depending on ordo.

discrimen, si iuvat, accingere, ut in singulas horas capite dimices tuo, ferrum hostemque in vestibulo habeas regiae. Hoc tibi iuventus Romana indicimus bellum. Nullam aciem, nullum proelium timueris; uni tibi et cum singulis res erit.' Cum rex simul ira infensus periculoque conterritus circumdari ignis minitabundus iuberet, nisi expromeret propere, quas insidiarum sibi minas per ambages iaceret, 'En tibi,' inquit, 'ut sentias, quam vile corpus sit iis, qui magnam gloriam vident,' dextramque accenso ad sacrificium foculo inicit. Prope attonitus miraculo rex cum ab sede sua prosluisset, amoverique ab altaribus iuvenem iussisset, 'Tu vero abi,' inquit, 'in te magis quam in me hostilia ausus. Nunc iure belli liberum te intactum inviolatumque hinc dimitto.' Tunc Mucius quasi remunerans meritum, 'Quando quidem,' inquit, 'est apud te virtuti honos, ut beneficio tuleris a me, quod minis nequisti: trecenti coniuravimus principes iuventutis Romanae, ut in te hac via grassaremur. Mea prima sors fuit; ceteri, utcumque ceciderit primi, quoad te opportunum fortuna dederit, suo quisque tempore aderunt.'

Mucium dimissum, cui postea Scaevolae a clade dextrae manus cognomen inditum, legati a Porsena Romam secuti sunt.

1. *accingere*: pass. (= "middle" or reflexive) imperat. of *accingere*, to gird one's self for. — in *singulas horas*, hour by hour, i.e., unceasingly. — *capite tuo*: transl. for your life.

2. *habeas*: coordin. with *dimices*.

3. *iuventus R.*: appos. with subject.

4. *timueris*: subjunc. in prohibition.

6. *minitabundus*: infer meaning from *minitari*, to threaten. — *expromere*, to explain. Remember

the tendency of the relative clause in Latin to attract the antecedent to itself.

7. *per ambages iacere*, to throw out obscurely. — *En tibi ut sentias*: transl. look and see.

14. *Quando quidem*, since indeed.

15. *ut tuleris*: transl. so that you have got from me.

17. *grassari*, to attack.

18. *primi*: depends on *sors sc.* Some read *primo* (dat.).

20. *Scaevola*: dimin. of *Scaeva*, the Left-handed.

158. *The Victor vanquished.*

Invitatis deinde ad epulas legatis gentium regulisque exor-  
nari convivium iussit. Intererat epulis Dioxippus Athe-  
niensis, pugil nobilis et ob eximiam virtutem virium etiam  
regi pernotus et gratus. Invidi malignique increpabant  
5 per seria et ludum. Eadem igitur in convivio Horratas  
Macedo iam temulentus exprobrare ei coepit et postulare,  
ut, si vir esset, postero die secum ferro decerneret : regem  
tandem vel de sua temeritate vel de illius ignavia iudica-  
turum. Et a Dioxippo contemptim militarem eludente  
10 ferociam accepta condicio est ac postero die rex, cum etiam  
acrius certamen exposcerent, quia detertere non poterat,  
destinata exsequi passus est. Ingens vis militum, inter quos  
erant Graeci, Dioxippo studebant. Macedo iusta arma  
sumpserat, aereum clipeum, hastam quam sarisam vocant  
15 laeva tenens, dextera lanceam gladioque cinctus, velut cum  
pluribus simul dimicaturus. Dioxippus oleo nitens et coro-  
natus laeva puniceum amiculum, dextera validum nodosumque  
stipitem praeferibat. Ea ipsa res omnium animos exspec-  
tatione suspenderat, quippe armato congredi nudum demen-  
20 tia, non temeritas videbatur. Igitur Macedo, haud dubius  
eminus interfici posse, lanceam emisit : quam Dioxippus  
cum exigua corporis declinatione vitasset, antequam ille  
hastam transferret in dextram, adsiluit et stipite mediam  
eam fregit. Amisso utroque telo Macedo gladium coeperat  
25 stringere. Quem occupatum complexu pedibus repente  
subductis Dioxippus arietavit in terram ereptoque gladio

2. iussit : sc. Alexander.

5. eadem refers to these charges  
or taunts.7. regem . . . iudicaturum :  
depends on "verb of saying" sc.12. destinata = subst. accus.  
pl. neut.16. oleum, oil. — coronatus : as  
if already successful.21. interfici posse : sc. adver-  
sarium.

23. adsilire : ad + salire.

26. arietare, to strike violently ;  
lit. to butt like a ram (aries).

pedem super cervicem iacenti inposuit, stipitem intentans elisurusque eo victum, ni prohibitus esset a rege. Tristis spectaculi eventus non Macedonibus modo, sed etiam Alexandro fuit, maxime quia barbari adfuerant, quippe celebratam Macedonum fortitudinem ad ludibrium recidis-<sup>5</sup> verebatur. Hinc ad criminationem invidorum adapertae sunt regis aures. Et post paucos dies inter epulas aureum poculum ex composito subducitur ministrique, quasi amisissent quod amoverant, regem adeunt. Coniectum oculorum, quibus ut fur destinabatur, Dioxippus ferre non potuit et,<sup>10</sup> cum excessisset convivio, litteris conscriptis, quae regi redderentur, ferro se interemit.

159. *All Dreams do not 'Go by Contraries.'*

Alterum ita traditum clarum admodum somnium : Cum duo quidam Arcades familiares iter una facerent et Megaram venissent, alterum ad cauponem devertisse, ad hospitem<sup>15</sup> alterum. Qui ut cenati quiescerent, concubia nocte visum esse in somnis ei, qui erat in hospitio, illum alterum orare, ut subveniret, quod sibi a caupone interitus pararetur ; eum primo perterritum somnio surrexisse ; dein cum se collegisset idque visum pro nihilo habendum esse duxisset, recubuisse ;<sup>20</sup>

2. eo : abl. and refers to what? — victum : sc. Macedonem. — Tristis : predic. nom.

5. recidere, to be reduced to.

8. ex composito, as arranged beforehand ; by agreement. — subducere, to remove by stealth (sub = on the sly).

10. fur, furis, thief.

13. Alterum somnium, a second dream (following the account of the first). Remember that

tradere is a "verb of saying."

14. Arcas, -adis, an Arcadian. — Megara : a city of Megaris (between Attica and the Peloponnesus).

15. caupo, -onis, a tavern-keeper.

16. Qui ut, when they. — concubia nocte, at dead of night.

18. interitus, -us, death.

19. se colligere, to collect one's self.

tum ei dormienti eundem illum visum esse rogare, ut, quoniam sibi vivo non subvenisset, mortem suam ne inultam esse pateretur; se interfectum in plaustrum a caupone esse coniectum et supra stercus iniectum; petere, ut mane ad  
 5 portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppido exiret. Hoc vero eum somnio commotum mane bubulco praesto ad portam fuisse, quaesisse ex eo, quid esset in plastro; illum perterritum fugisse, mortuum erutum esse, cauponem re patefacta poenas dedisse.

160. *The Golden Age.*

- 10 Aurea prima sata est aetas, quae vindice nullo  
 sponte sua, sine lege fidem rectumque colebat.  
 Poena metusque aberant, nec verba minacia fixo  
 aere legebantur, nec supplex turba timebat  
 iudicis ora sui, sed erant sine vindice tuti.  
 15 Nondum caesa suis, peregrinum ut viseret orbem,  
 montibus in liquidas pinus descenderat undas,  
 nullaue mortales praeter sua litora norant.  
 Nondum praecipites cingebant oppida fossae;  
 non tuba directi, non aeris cornua flexi,  
 20 non galeae, non ensis erant: sine militis usu  
 mollia securae peragebant otia gentes.

4. stercus, -oris is neut. (supra is adv.) — *ad portam*: i.e., of the city.

6. bubulcus, a plough-man. — *praesto esse*, (with dat.) *to confront*, lit. *to be on hand for*.

8. eruere, *to dig out, draw out*.

10. serere, *to establish*. — *vin-dex, -icis, protector from wrong; avenger*.

12. fixo aere: laws were set up on bronze tablets.

14. os, oris.

16. pinus is fem.; used in ship-building.

19. The tuba, -ae (*trumpet*), was a straight instrument; the cornu, -us (*horn*), originally the horn of an ox, provided with a mouth-piece, but made also of brass, was bent.

Ipsa quoque immunis rastroque intacta nec ullis  
 saucia vomeribus per se dabat omnia tellus.  
 Ver erat aeternum placidique tepentibus auris  
 mulcebant zephyri natos sine semine flores.  
 Mox etiam fruges tellus inarata ferebat,  
 nec renovatus ager gravidis canebat aristis :  
 flumina iam lactis, iam flumina nectaris ibant,  
 flavaque de viridi stillabant ilice mella.

5

161. *Caesar did not forget his Veterans.*

Causam dicebat apud divum Iulium ex veteranis quidam paulo violentior adversus vicinos suos et causa premebatur. 10  
 'Meministi,' inquit, 'imperator, in Hispania talum extorsisse circa Sucronem?' Cum Caesar meminisse se dixisset, 'Meministi quidem,' inquit, 'sub quadam arbore minimum umbrae spargente cum velles residere ferventissimo sole et esset asperimus locus, in quo ex rupibus acutis unica illa 15  
 arbor eruperat, quendam ex commilitonibus paenulam suam substravisse?' Cum dixisset Caesar : 'Quidni memin-  
 erim? et quidem siti confectus, quia impeditus ire ad fontem proximum non poteram, repere manibus volebam, nisi commilito, homo fortis ac strenuus, aquam mihi in galea 20  
 sua adtulisset.' 'Potes ergo,' inquit, 'imperator, agnoscere illum hominem aut illam galeam?' Caesar ait se non posse galeam cognoscere, hominem pulchre posse, et adiecit, puto

1. Ipsa: with tellus (2).—  
 immunis: i.e., exempt from culti-  
 vation.—rastrum, rake, hoe.

3. auris: from aura, -ae.

4. mulcēre, to touch lightly,  
 soften.

6. nec modifies renovatus.—  
 arista, harvest (lit. the beard of  
 grain).

8. stillare, to drop, trickle.

12. Sucro, -onis: a town in  
 Spain (in Tarraconensis) on a  
 river of the same name.

16. commilito, a fellow-soldier.  
 —paenula, cloak.

18. confectus, worn out.

23. puto . . . abduceret is  
 parenthetical.

ob hoc iratus, quod se a cognitione media ad veterem fabulam abduceret: 'Tu utique ille non es.' 'Merito,' inquit, 'Caesar, me non adgnosces: nam cum hoc factum est, integer eram. Postea ad Mundam in acie oculus mihi  
 5 effosus est et in capite lecta ossa. Nec galeam illam, si videris, adgnosces. Machaera enim Hispana divisa est.' Vetuit illi exhiberi negotium Caesar et agellos, in quibus vicinalis via causa rixae ac litium fuerat, militi suo donavit.

162. *The Persian King at the Battle of Issus.*

Alexander non ducis magis quam militis munia exsequeba-  
 10 tur, opimum decus caeso rege expetens, quippe Dareus curru sublimis eminebat, et suis ad se tuendum et hostibus ad incessendum ingens incitamentum. Ergo frater eius Oxathres, cum Alexandrum instare ei cerneret, equites, quibus praeerat, ante ipsum currum regis obiecit. Armis et  
 15 robore corporis multum super ceteros eminens, animo vero et pietate in paucis insignis, illo utique proelio clarus, alios improvide instantes prostravit, alios in fugam avertit. At Macedones, qui circa regem erant, mutua adhortatione firmati cum ipso in equitum agmen inrumpunt. Tum vero  
 20 similis ruinae strages erat. Circa currum Darei iacebant nobilissimi duces, ante oculos regis egregia morte defuncti, omnes in ora proni, sicut dimicantes procubuerant, adverso corpore vulneribus acceptis. Inter hos Atizyes et Rheo-

1. *cognitio, judicial enquiry, trial.*

2. *utique, at any rate, certainly.*  
 — *merito: adv.*

3. "Caesar . . . by a final victory at Munda [in Spain] established his undivided authority over the Roman Empire." (Wm. F. Allen, 'A Short History of the Roman People,' p. 219.)

5. *lecta: from legere (here), to remove.*

6. *machaera, sword.*

7. *agellus: dimin. of ager.*

8. *rixa, dispute.*

9. *munia, -orum, duties.*

12. *incessere, to attack.*

20. *strages, -is, carnage, slaughter.*

mithres et Sabaces, praetor Aegypti, magnorum exercituum praefecti, noscitantur; circa eos cumulata erat peditum equitumque obscurior turba. Macedonum quoque non quidem multi, sed promptissimi tamen caesi sunt, inter quos Alexandri dextrum femur leviter mucrone perstrictum est. 5 Iamque qui Dareum vehebant equi, confossi hastis et dolore efferati iugum quaterere et regem curru excutere coeperant, cum ille veritus, ne vivus veniret in hostium potestatem, desilit et in equum, qui ad hoc ipsum sequebatur, inponitur, insignibus quoque imperii, ne fugam proderent, indecore 10 abiectis.

\* 163. *The Augur Attus Navius and his Razor.*

Ex quo factum est, ut eum ad se rex Priscus arcesseret. Cuius cum temptaret scientiam auguratus, dixit ei cogitare se quiddam; id possetne fieri, consuluit. Ille augurio acto posse respondit. Tarquinius autem dixit se cogitasse cotem 15 novacula posse praecidi. Tum Attum iussisse experiri. Ita cotem in comitium adlatam inspectante et rege et populo novacula esse discissam. Ex eo evenit, ut et Tarquinius augure Atto Navio uteretur et populus de suis rebus ad eum referret. Cotem autem illam et novaculam defossam in 20 comitio supraque inpositum puteal accepimus.

164. *The Easy-going Man.*

Felix, qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas  
atque metus omnes et inexorabile fatum

7. efferatus, wild.

13. Cuius: i.e., Attus Navius.—  
auguratus, -us = augurium, augury. (augur, -uris = soothsayer.)

15. Tarquinius: sc. Priscus, King of Rome. — cos, cotis, flint-stone.

16. novacula, razor. — Tum Attum: sc. ferunt, they say.

18. discindere, to cut in two.

21. supra: adverb. — puteal, -alis, curb-stone.

23. fatum = mors.



- subiecit pedibus strepitumque Acherontis avari.  
 Fortunatus et ille, deos qui novit agrestis,  
 Panaque Silvanumque senem nymphasque sorores.  
 Illum non populi fascēs, non purpura regum  
 5 flexit et infidos agitans discordia fratres,  
 aut coniurato descendens Dacus ab Histro,  
 non res Romanae perituraque regna, neque ille  
 aut doluit miserans inopem, aut invidit habenti.  
 Quos rami fructus, quos ipsa volentia rura  
 10 sponte tulere sua, carpsit, nec ferrea iura  
 insanumque forum aut populi tabularia vidit.

165. *Nero's Golden House.*

- Non in alia re tamen damnosior, quam in aedificando,  
 domum a Palatio Esquilias usque fecit, quam primo 'transi-  
 toriam,' mox incendio absumptam restitutamque 'auream'  
 15 nominavit. De cuius spatio atque cultu suffecerit haec  
 rettulisse. Vestibulum eius fuit, in quo colossus cxx pedum

3. **Pan, Panos**: god of woods and shepherds. — **Silvanus**: god of woods and orchards.

4. **fascēs** (plur.; **fascis**, -is = *bundle*): lit. the lictor's bundle of rods and axe carried before the magistrate as a symbol of his power. — **populi** is contrasted with **regum**.

5. **infidos . . . fratres** refers probably to quarrels in royal families of the East.

6. **coniurato**: logically modifies **Dacus**, i.e., = **coniuratus Dacus** (sing. for plur.), though it grammatically agrees with **Histro** (**Hister**, -tri, *the lower Danube*), on which,

when frozen, the **Daci** crossed into Roman territory.

8. **habenti**: sc. dat. pron. Why dat.?

9. **rami**: nom. plur.

10. **sponte**, of one's own accord (often with **mea**, **tua**, or **sua**). — **ferrea iura**, "the iron rigor of the law."

11. **insanus**, mad, turbulent. — **tabularium**, archives.

12. **damnosus**: infer meaning (**damnum**, *damage, loss*).

13. **Esquiliae**, -arum, the *Esquiline Hill* in Rome.

15. **sufficere**, to be sufficient.

16. **colossus**, a gigantic statue.

staret ipsius effigie; tanta laxitas, ut porticus triplices milliarias haberet; item stagnum maris instar, circumsaep-  
 ptum aedificiis ad urbium speciem; rura insuper arvis atque  
 vinetis et pascuis silvisque varia, cum multitudinem omnis  
 generis pecudum ac ferarum. In ceteris partibus cuncta  
 auro lita, distincta gemmis unionumque conchis erant. Cena-  
 tiones laqueatae tabulis eburneis versatilibus, ut flores,  
 fistulatis, ut unguenta desuper spargerentur. Praecipua  
 cenationum rotunda, quae perpetuo diebus ac noctibus vice  
 mundi circumageretur; balineae marinis et Albulis fluentes  
 aquis. Eius modi domum cum absolutam dedicaret, hac-  
 tenus comprobavit, ut se diceret quasi hominem tandem  
 habitare coepisse.

166. *How Themistocles fortified Athens.*

Magnus hoc bello Themistocles fuit neque minor in pace.  
 Cum enim Phalerico portu neque magno neque bono  
 Athenienses uterentur, huius consilio triplex Piraei portus

1. *laxitas, -atis, roominess, spaciousness.* — *triplices milliarias*: i.e., each was 1000 ft. long.

2. *stagnum, pond.* The Colosseum now covers the spot.

4. *vinetum*: infer meaning from *vinum*. — *pascua, -orum, pastures.* — *varia*: with *rura*. The horti Neronis are referred to in *rura*.

6. *litus*: particip. of *linere* (*lino*), *to overlay* (lit. *smear*). — *distinctus, varied, decorated.* — *unio, -onis, a large pearl.* — *concha* also means *a pearl* (lit. *a pearl oyster*). — *cenatio, dining-hall.*

7. *laqueatus, paneled, fretted.* — *eburneus*: infer meaning from *ebur*. — *versatilibus*: the whole ceiling could be turned (*vertiere*) by machinery.

8. *fistulatus, provided with pipes or tubes.* — *praecipua cenationum* = *praecipuae cenationes*.

10. *balineae (plur.), baths.* — *Albulis . . . aquis, water brought from the Albulae*, the famous sulphur-springs near Tibur.

11. *absolutus, finished.* — *hactenus, so far . . . that (ut).*

15. *Phalerum* was the oldest harbor of Athens. The main harbor was called *Piraeus*.

constitutus est iisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequiperaret, utilitate superaret. Idem muros Atheniensium restituit praecipuo suo periculo. Namque Lacedaemonii causam idoneam nacti propter barbarorum, 5 excursiones, qua negarent oportere extra Peloponnesum ullam urbem muros habere, ne essent loca munita, quae hostes possiderent, Athenienses aedificantes prohibere sunt conati. Hoc longe alio spectabat atque videri volebant. Athenienses enim duabus victoriis, Marathonia et Salami- 10 nia, tantam gloriam apud omnes gentes erant consecuti, ut intellexerent Lacedaemonii de principatu sibi cum iis certamen fore. Quare eos quam infirmissimos esse volebant. Postquam autem audierunt muros strui, legatos Athenas miserunt, qui id fieri vetarent. His praesentibus, desierunt 15 ac se de ea re legatos ad eos missuros dixerunt. Hanc legationem suscepit Themistocles et solus primo profectus est : reliqui legati ut tum exirent, cum satis alti tuendo muri exstructi viderentur, praecepit : interim omnes, servi atque liberi, opus facerent neque ulli loco parcerent, sive sacer 20 sive profanus, sive privatus esset sive publicus, et undique, quod idoneum ad muniendum putarent, congererent. Quo factum est ut Atheniensium muri ex sacellis sepulchrisque constarent.

Themistocles autem, ut Lacedaemonem venit, adire ad 25 magistratus noluit et dedit operam, ut quam longissime tempus duceret, causam interponens se collegas exspectare. Cum Lacedaemonii quererentur opus nihilo minus fieri

2 aequiperare, *to equal, match.*

5. qua : sc. causa.

8. hoc : this prohibition of the Lacedaemonii had a far different object. — atque, *than* (after *longe alio*).

12. eos : the Athenians.

17. reliqui legati ut : depends on praecepit. — tuendo : gerund in dat.

23. constare, *to be composed of.*

26. collega, *colleague, associate* (in the embassy).

27. opus is subj. of fieri.

eumque in ea re conari fallere, interim reliqui legati sunt consecuti. A quibus cum audisset non multum superesse munitionis, ad ephoros Lacedaemoniorum accessit, penes quos summum erat imperium, atque apud eos contendit falsa iis esse delata : quare aequum esse illos viros bonos nobi- 5 lesque mittere, quibus fides haberetur, qui rem explorarent ; interea se obsidem retinerent. Gestus est ei mos, tresque legati functi summis honoribus Athenas missi sunt. Cum his collegas suos Themistocles iussit proficisci iisque praedixit, ut ne prius Lacedaemoniorum legatos dimitterent 10 quam ipse esset remissus. Hos postquam Athenas pervenisse ratus est, ad magistratus senatumque Lacedaemoniorum adiit et apud eos liberrime professus est Athenienses suo consilio — quod communi iure gentium facere possent — 15 deosque publicos suosque patrios ac penates, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere, muris saepsisse, neque in eo, quod inutile esset Graeciae, fecisse, nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium. Lacedaemonios autem male et iniuste facere, qui id potius intuerentur, quod 20 ipsorum dominationi, quam quod universae Graeciae utile esset. Quare, si suos legatos recipere vellent, quos Athenas miserant, se remitterent, cum aliter illos nunquam in patriam essent recepturi.

1. eum refers to whom ?

4. contendere, to insist upon (a thing as a fact).

7. morem gerere alicui, to comply with one's wishes. — ei = Themistocli.

8. fungi (fungor), functus, to discharge, perform.

13. suo consilio : refers to subj. of main verb (professus est).

15. deos publicos : i.e., of the various Grecian states in distinc-

tion from the gods of Athens (d. patrios) ; obj. of saepsisse. — quo = ut eo.

17. illorum : i.e., Athens.

18. propugnaculum, fortress ; in appos. with urbem, (ut = as) with which oppositum would more naturally agree. — apud quam = et apud eam.

19. naufragium (= navifragium : navis + frangere), lit. shipwreck ; here destruction.

167. *'Coming Events cast their Shadows before.'*

Est profecto quiddam etiam in barbaris gentibus praesentiens atque divins, siquidem ad mortem proficiscens Calanus Indus, cum inscenderet in rogi ardentem, 'O praeclarum discessum,' inquit, 'e vita, cum, ut Herculi  
 5 contigit, mortali corpore cremato in lucem animus excesserit!' Cumque Alexander eum rogaret, si quid vellet, ut diceret, 'Optime,' inquit; 'propediem te videbo.' Quod ita contigit; nam Babylone paucis post diebus Alexander est mortuus. Discedo parumper a somniis, ad quae  
 10 revertar. Qua nocte templum Ephesiae Dianae deflagavit, eadem constat ex Olympiade natum esse Alexandrum, atque, ubi lucere coepisset, clamitasse magos pestem ac perniciem Asiae proxima nocte natam.

168. *Primitive Men.*

Ante Iovem nulli subigebant arva coloni;  
 15 ne signare quidem aut partiri limite campum  
 fas erat; in medium quaerebant, ipsaque tellus  
 omnia liberior, nullo poscente, ferebat.  
 Ille malum virus serpentibus addidit atris,  
 praedarique lupos iussit, pontumque moveri,  
 20 mellaque discussit foliis, ignemque removit,  
 et passim rivis currentia vina repressit.  
 Tunc alnos primum fluvii sensere cavatas;  
 navita tum stellis numeros et nomina fecit;

3. *rogus, funeral pile.*7. *propediem, at an early day, shortly.*14. *subigere, to subdue (soil), i.e., to plough.*15. *signare = adsignare, to allot. — limes, a boundary (lit. a**cross-path left uncultivated in order to serve as a "land-mark").*16. *in medium: i.e., with regard to a common stock.*18. *virus is neuter.*22. *alnus, alder. Here = navicula or linter, boat.*

tum laqueis captare feras, et fallere visco.  
inventum, et magnos canibus circumdare saltus;  
atque alius latum funda iam verberat amnem,  
alta petens alius pelago trahit umida lina.

169. *An Orientalized Greek.*

Hic vero palam cupiditates suas solvit continentiamque 5  
et moderationem in superbiam ac lasciviam vertit. Iacere  
humi venerabundos ipsum paulatimque servilibus ministeriis  
tot victores gentium imbuere et captivis pares facere expete-  
bat. Itaque purpureum diadema distinctum albo, quale  
Dareus habuerat, capiti circumdedit vestemque Persicam 10  
sumpsit, ne omen quidem veritus, quod a victoris insignibus  
in devicti transiret habitum. Et ille se quidem spolia Per-  
sarium gestare dicebat, sed cum illis quoque mores induerat,  
superbiamque habitus animi insolentia sequebatur: — litte-  
ras quoque, quas in Europam mitteret, veteris anuli gemma 15  
obsignabat, iis, quas in Asiam scriberet, Darei anulus  
inprimebatur. Amicos vero et equites — hi namque prin-  
cipes militum — aspernantes quidem, sed recusare non ausos  
Persicis ornaverant vestibus. Paelices CCC et LXV, totidem  
quot Darei fuerant, regiam implebant. Haec luxu et pere- 20  
grinis infecta moribus veteres Philippi milites, rudis natio  
ad voluptates, palam aversabantur totisque castris unus  
omnium sensus ac sermo erat, plus amissum victoria, quam  
bello esse quaesitum.

1. laqueus, *trap, toils*. — viscum, *bird-lime*.

2. inventum: sc. est.

3. funda, a *casting-net* (used in fishing).

4. linum, *fishing-line* (lit. *flax*).

5. Hic: i.e., Alexander the Great.

7. venerabundos agrees with subj. of iacere.

8. imbuere, *to accustom to*. Cf. Eng. *imbue*.

9. diadema, -atis (neut.), a *tiara*.

21. rudis ad, *unacquainted with*.

170. *Man Better than the Beast.*

Principio generi animantium omni est a natura tributum, ut se, vitam corpusque tueatur, declinet ea, quae nocitura, videantur, omniaque, quae sint ad vivendum necessaria, anquirat et paret, ut pastum, ut latibula, ut alia generis eius-  
 5 dem. Commune item animantium omnium est coniunctionis appetitus procreandi causa et cura quaedam eorum, quae procreata sint. Sed inter hominem et beluam hoc maxime interest, quod haec tantum, quantum sensu movetur, ad id solum, quod adest quodque praesens est, se  
 10 accommodat, paulum admodum sentiens praeteritum aut futurum. Homo autem, quod rationis est particeps, per quam consequentia cernit, causas rerum videt earumque progressus non ignorat, similitudines comparat rebusque praesentibus adiungit atque adnectit futuras; facile totius  
 15 vitae cursum videt ad eamque degendam praeparat res necessarias. Eademque natura vi rationis hominem conciliat homini et ad orationis et ad vitae societatem, ingeneratque in primis praecipuum quendam amorem in eos, qui procreati sunt, impellitque ut hominum coetus et celebra-  
 20 tiones et esse et a se obiri velit ob easque causas studeat parare ea, quae suppeditent ad cultum et ad victum, nec sibi soli, sed coniugi, liberis ceterisque, quos caros habeat tuerique debeat. Quae cura exsuscitat etiam animos et maiores ad rem gerendam facit. In primisque hominis est  
 25 propria veri inquisitio atque investigatio.

8. haec: i.e., the belua.

10. praeteritus, (adj.) *past*.11. particeps, *sharing* (used with genit.).21. suppeditare, *to be sufficient, supply*.

171. *The Prayer of the Sensible Man.*

Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.  
 Fortem posce animum, mortis terrore carentem,  
 qui spatium vitae extremum inter munera ponat  
 naturae, qui ferre queat quoscumque labores,  
 nesciat irasci, cupiat nihil et potiores  
 Herculis aerumnas credat saevosque labores  
 et Venere et cenis et pluma Sardanapalli.  
 Monstro, quod ipse tibi possis dare. Semita certe  
 tranquillae per virtutem patet unica vitae.

5

172. *'The Wit of One, the Wisdom of Many.'*

Toward the end of the Republic the *mimus*, or "farce," took literary form and increased in popularity with the growing love of show and the decline of the regular drama. The most popular mime-writers were the two rivals here mentioned, viz.: D. Laberius (B.C. 106-43) and Publilius Syrus (about B.C. 45).

Publilius mimos scriptitavit. Dignus habitus est, qui 10  
 subpar Laberio iudicaretur. Huius Publilii sententiae ferun-  
 tur pleraeque lepidae et ad communem sermonum usum  
 commendatissimae, ex quibus sunt istae singulis versibus  
 circumscriptae, quas libitum hercle est adscribere :

Malum est consilium, quod mutari non potest. — 15  
 Beneficium dando accepit, qui digno dedit. —  
 Feras, non culpes, quod vitari non potest. —  
 Comes facundus in via pro vehiculo est. —  
 Furor fit in laesa saepius patientia. —

3. qui refers to fortem ani-  
 mum. — spatium, lit. *space, stretch*  
 (in the race) here = *diem*.

6. aerumna, *tail, hardship*.

7. pluma, *downy couch*. — Sar-

danapallus: an effeminate Assy-  
 rian king.

17. culpae, *to complain of*.

18. facundus, *fluent*.



Inprobe Neptunum accusat, qui iterum naufragium facit. —

Nunquam periculum sine periculo vincitur. —

Nimium altercando veritas amittitur. —

Pars beneficii est, quod petitur, si belle neges. —

173. *Alexander murders the Man who had saved his Life.*

- 5 Hic erat, qui apud Granicum amnem nudo capite regem  
dimicantem clipeo suo texit et Rhosacis manum capiti regis  
imminentem gladio amputavit, vetus Philippi miles multisque  
bellicis operibus clarus. Hellenice, quae Alexandrum edu-  
caverat, soror eius, haud secus quam mater a rege diligeba-  
10 tur. Ob has causas validissimam imperii partem fidei  
eius tutelaeque commisit. Iamque iter parare in posterum  
iussus sollemni et tempestivo adhibetur convivio. In quo  
rex, cum multo incaluisset mero, immodicus aestimator sui,  
celebrare, quae gesserat, coepit, gravis etiam eorum auribus,  
15 qui sentiebant vera memorari. Silentium tamen habuere  
seniores, donec Philippi res orsus obterere nobilem apud  
Chaeroneam victoriam sui operis fuisse iactavit ademptam-  
que sibi malignitate et invidia patris tantae rei gloriam.  
Haec et his similia laeti audiere iuvenes, ingrata senioribus  
20 erant, maxime propter Philippum, sub quo diutius vixerant.  
Hinc inter iuniores senesque orta contentio est. Iamque  
Clitus etiam Parmenionem defendere audebat et Philippi  
de Atheniensibus victoriam Thebarum praeferebat excidio,  
non vino modo, sed etiam animi prava contentione provec-

3. altercari, to wrangle, dispute.

4. belle, gracefully, in a well-bred manner.

5. Hic: i.e., Clitus. — Granicus: a river of Mysia made famous by Alexander's victory over the Persians.

12. adhibere, to invite.

22. Parmenion, though one of the most trusted and famous generals of Alexander, was basely assassinated on a charge (probably false) of conspiracy against him.

tus. Ad ultimum, 'Si moriendum,' inquit, 'est pro te, Clitus est primus : at cum victoriae arbitrium agis, praecipuum ferunt praemium, qui procacissime patris tui memoriae inludunt. Sogdianam regionem mihi attribuis, totiens rebellem et non modo indomitam, sed quae ne subigi quidem possit.' Nihil ex omnibus inconsulte ac temere iactis regem magis moverat, quam Parmenionis cum honore mentio inlata. Dolorem tamen rex pressit, contentus iussisse, ut convivio excederet. Illum cunctantem adhuc surgere, qui proximi ei cubuerant, iniectis manibus iurgantes monentesque conabantur abducere. Clitus, cum abstraheretur, ad pristinam violentiam ira quoque adiecta, suo pectore tergum illius esse defensum, nunc, postquam tanti meriti praeterierit tempus, etiam memoriam invisam esse, proclamat. Iam tantum irae conceperat rex, quantum vix sobrius ferre potuisset. Enimvero olim mero sensibus victis ex lecto repente prosiluit. Attoniti amici ne positus quidem, sed abiectis poculis consurgunt in eventum rei, quam tanto impetu acturus esset, intenti. Alexander rapta lancea ex manibus armigeri Clitum adhuc eadem linguae intemperantia furentem percutere conatus a Ptolemaeo et Perdicca inhibetur. Medium complexi obluctari perseverantem morabantur ; Lysimachus et Leonnatus etiam lanceam abstulerant. Ille militum fidem implorans comprehendi se a proximis amicorum, quod Dareo nuper accidisset, exclamat signumque tuba dari, ut ad regiam armati coirent, iubet. Tum vero Ptolemaeus et Perdiccas genibus advoluti orant, ne in tam praecipiti ira perseveret spatiumque potius animo det : omnia postero die iustius exsecuturum. Sed clausae erant aures obstrepente ira. Itaque impotens animi procurrit in regiae

3. procaciter : infer meaning from *procax*.

4. The Sogdiana regio lay between the rivers Oxus and Iaxartes.

13. illius : i.e., Alexander.

21. inhibere, to pull back, restrain.

vestibulum et, vigili excubanti hasta ablata, constitit in aditu, quo necesse erat iis, qui simul cenaverant, egredi. Abierant ceteri. Clitus ultimus sine lumine exibat. Quem rex, quisnam esset, interrogat. Eminebat etiam in voce  
 5 sceleris, quod parabat, atrocitas. Et ille, iam non suae, sed regis irae memor, Clitum esse et de convivio exire respondit. Haec dicentis latus hasta transfixit morientisque sanguine adpersus, 'I nunc,' inquit, 'ad Philippum et Parmenionem.'

174. *The Condemnation of Socrates.*

Imitatus est homo Romanus et consularis veterem illum  
 10 Socratem, qui, cum omnium sapientissimus esset sanctissimeque vixisset, ita in iudicio capitis pro se ipse dixit, ut non supplex aut reus, sed magister aut dominus videretur esse iudicum. Quin etiam, cum ei scriptam orationem disertissimus orator Lysias attulisset, quam, si ei videretur,  
 15 edisceret, ut ea pro se in iudicio uteretur, non invitus legit et commode scriptam esse dixit; 'sed,' inquit, 'ut, si mihi calceos Sicyonios attulisses, non uterer, quamvis essent habiles et apti ad pedem, quia non essent viriles': sic illam orationem disertam sibi et oratoriam videri, fortem et  
 20 virilem non videri. Ergo ille quoque damnatus est; neque solum primis sententiis, quibus tantum statuebant iudices, damnarent an absolverent, sed etiam illis, quas iterum legibus ferre debebant. Erat enim Athenis reo damnato, si fraus capitalis non esset, quasi poenae aestimatio; et  
 25 sententia cum iudicibus daretur, interrogabatur reus, quam quasi aestimationem commovere se maxime confiteretur. Quod cum interrogatus Socrates esset, respondit sese me-

1. excubare, to be on guard.

7. hasta is abl. c.

15. ediscere, to learn by heart.

—ea: sc. oratione.

17. calceus, shoe.

19. disertus, eloquent, well-expressed.

22. damnarent depends on statuebant.

24. fraus, (here) offense, crime.

ruisse, ut amplissimis honoribus et praemiis decoraretur et ut ei victus cotidianus in Prytaneo publice praeberetur, qui honos apud Graecos maximus habetur. Cuius responso iudices sic exarserunt, ut capitis hominem innocentissimum condemnarent.

5

175. *The Ages of Man.*

Aetatis cuiusque notandi sunt tibi mores,  
 mobilibusque decor naturis dandus et annis.  
 Reddere qui voces iam scit puer et pede certo  
 signat humum, gestit paribus concludere, et iram  
 colligit ac ponit temere et mutatur in horas.  
 Imberbis iuvenis tandem custode remoto  
 gaudet equis canibusque et aprici gramine campi;  
 cereus in vitium flecti, monitoribus asper,  
 utilium tardus provisor, prodigus aeris,  
 sublimis cupidusque et amata relinquere pernix.  
 Conversis studiis aetas animusque virilis  
 quaerit opes et amicitias, inservit honori,  
 commisisse cavet quod mox mutare labore.  
 Multa senem circumveniunt incommoda, vel quod  
 quaerit et inventis miser abstinet ac timet uti,  
 vel quod res omnes timide gelideque ministrat,

10

15

20

2. **Prytaneum**: town-hall where the Prytanes dined. To certain men who had deserved well of the state, the right of being entertained there at public expense was voted, sometimes for life.

4. **exardescere** is here used in a figurat. sense.

7. **mobilis**, *changing*.

8. **reddere voces**, *to repeat, recite words*.

9. **gestire**, *to desire earnestly*.

10. *in horas, from hour to hour.*

11. **custos** = *paedagogus*.

12. **apricus**, *sunny*.

13. **cereus**, *pliant* (like *cera*, -ae, *wax*). — **flecti**: in Latin poetry the infin. often depends on an adjective.

14. **aes, aeris**, *money*.

15. **pernix**, *quick*.

17. **inservire**: — not *inservare*; honores were the great magistracies.

19. **quod**: *causal*.

dilator, spe longus, iners, avidusque futuri,  
 difficilis, querulus, laudator temporis acti  
 se puero, castigator censorque minorum.  
 Multa ferunt anni venientes commoda secum,  
 multa recedentes adimunt.

176. *An Object Lesson in Temperance.*

Temperantia quoque fuisse Socratem tanta traditum est,  
 ut omnia fere vitae suae tempora valetudine inoffensa vixerit.  
 In illius etiam pestilentiae vastitate, quae in belli Pelopon-  
 nensiaci principis Atheniensium civitatem internecivo genere  
 morbi depopulata est, is parcendi moderandique rationibus  
 dicitur et a voluptatum labe cavisse et salubritates corporis  
 retinuisse, ut nequaquam fuerit communi omnium cladi  
 obnoxius.

177. *The Wisdom of Nature.*

Animantium vero quanta varietas est, quanta ad eam rem  
 vis, ut in suo quaeque genere permaneat! Quarum aliae  
 coriis tectae sunt, aliae villis vestitae, aliae spinis hirsutae;  
 pluma alias, alias squama videmus obductas, alias esse  
 cornibus armatas, alias habere effugia pennarum. Pastum  
 autem animantibus large et copiose natura eum, qui cuique  
 aptus erat, comparavit. Dedit autem eadem natura beluis

1. *dilator, procrastinator.*—spe longus, trans. either *slow to hope* (he has been often deceived), or *looking far ahead* (he has learned worldly wisdom).

5. *adimere, to take away.*

7. *inoffensus, unbroken, uninterrupted.*

8. *belli Peloponnes.*: the great struggle in Greece between the democratic and oligarchic systems,

known as the Peloponnesian War, lasted for 27 years, i.e., from B.C. 431-404.

9. *internecivus, deadly.*

11. *labes, ruin; voluptatum* is subject. genit.

17. *squama = squamis.*

18. *effugia pennarum, a means of escape by wings, or wings as a means of escape* (from enemies).

et sensum et appetitum. Iam vero alia animalia gradiendo, alia serpendo ad pastum accedunt, alia volando, alia nando, cibumque partim oris hiatu et dentibus ipsis capessunt, partim unguium tenacitate adripiunt, partim aduncitate rostrorum; alia sugunt, alia carpunt, alia vorant, alia mandunt; 5 atque etiam aliorum ea est humilitas, ut cibum terrestrem rostris facile contingant; quae autem altiora sunt, ut anseres, ut cycni, ut grues, ut cameli, adiuvantur proceritate collorum; manus etiam data elephanto est, quia propter magnitudinem corporis difficiles aditus habebat ad pastum. At 10 quibus bestiis erat is cibis, ut aliis bestiis vescerentur, aut vires natura dedit aut celeritatem. Data est quibusdam etiam machinatio quaedam atque sollertia, ut in araneolis aliae quasi rete texunt, ut, si quid inhaeserit, conficiant, aliae autem ex inopinato observant et, si quid incidit, adripiunt idque consumunt. Est etiam admiratio non nulla in bestiis aquatilibus iis, quae gignuntur in terra; veluti crocodili fluviatilesque testudines quaedamque serpentes ortae extra aquam, simul ac primum niti possunt, aquam persequuntur. Quin etiam anatum ova gallinis saepe supponimus, 20 e quibus pulli orti primum aluntur ab iis, ut a matribus, a quibus exclusi fotique sunt, deinde eas relinquunt et effugiunt sequentes, cum primum aquam, quasi naturalem domum, videre potuerunt. Tantam ingenuit animantibus conservandi sui natura custodiam. 25

3. hiatus, *gaping, opening*.  
 4. aduncitas: infer meaning from ad + uncus, *hooked, curved*.  
 5. sugere, *to suck*. — mandere, *to chew*.

6. humilitas, (nearness to the ground — humus) *low stature, i.e., they were short-legged*.

8. anser, *goose*.

9. manus = proboscis.

13. machinatio, -onis, *contrivance, device*. — araneola, diminut. of aranea, -ae, *spider*.

14. rete, -is, *net*. — conficere, *to destroy*.

15. ex inopinato, *on the sly*.

18. testudo, *tortoise*.

20. anas, -atis, *duck*.

21. pullus, *chick*.

178. *The Death of Alexander.*

Quarto die Alexander indubitata mortem sentiens agnoscere se fatum domus suae ait: nam plerosque Aeacidarum intra xxx annum defunctos. Tumultuantes deinde milites insidiisque perisse regem suspicantes ipse sedavit, eosque omnes ad conspectum suum admisit osculandamque dexteram suam flentibus porrexit. Cum lacrimarent omnes, ipse non sine lacrimis tantum, verum sine ullo tristioris mentis argumento fuit, ut quosdam impatientius dolentes consolatus sit, quibusdam mandata ad parentes eorum dederit: adeo sicuti in hostem, ita et in mortem invictus animus fuit. Dimissis militibus circumstantes amicos percontatur, videantur ne similem sibi reperturi regem. Ad postremum corpus suum in Hammonis templum condit iubet. Cum deficere eum amici viderent, quaerunt, quem imperii faciat heredem. Respondit 'dignissimum.' Tanta illi magnitudo animi fuit, ut, cum Herculem filium, cum fratrem Arridaeum, cum Roxanen uxorem praegnantem relinqueret, oblitus necessitudinum dignissimum nuncuparet heredem: prorsus quasi nefas esset viro forti alium quam virum fortem succedere, aut tanti regni opes aliis quam probatis relinqui. Hac voce veluti bellicum inter amicos cecinisset aut malum Discordiae misisset, ita omnes in aemulationem consurgunt et ambitione vulgi tacitum favorem militum quaerunt. Sexta die praeclusa voce exemptum digito anulum Perdiccae tradidit, quae res gliscentem amicorum dissensionem sedavit. Nam, etsi non voce nuncupatus heres, iudicio tamen electus

2. Aeacidæ, -arum.

3. defunctos: sc. vita.

8. argumentum, sign.

17. Roxane, -es.

18. nuncupare, to name.

20. probatis: sc. illis.

21. bellicum canere, to give a signal for battle. — malum, apple.

24. Perdiccas, -ae: one of Alexander's generals.

25. gliscere, to increase.

videbatur. Decessit Alexander mense Iunio annos tres et  
xxx natus.

179. *The Cobbler as Doctor.*

Malus cum sutor inopia deperditus,  
medicinam ignoto facere coepisset loco  
et venditaret falso antidotum nomine, 5  
verbosis adquisivit sibi famam strophis.  
Hic cum iaceret morbo confectus gravi,  
rex urbis, eius experiendi gratia,  
scyphum poposcit; fusa dein simulans aqua  
antidoto miscere illius se toxicum, 10  
ebibere iussit ipsum, posito praemio.  
Timore mortis ille tum confessus est,  
non artis ulla medicae se prudentia,  
verum stupore vulgi factum nobilem.  
Rex advocata contione haec edidit: 15  
'Quantae putatis esse vos dementiae,  
qui capita vestra non dubitatis credere,  
cui calceandos nemo commisit pedes?'

180. *'Give me back my Legions!'*

In the year B.C. 16 M. Lollius was defeated by the Germans and an  
"eagle" lost. In 9 A.D. in the saltus Teutoburgiensis the German  
Arminius (Hermann) defeated and almost annihilated the Roman army  
of Quintilius Varus — three legions miserably perishing.

Graves ignominias cladesque duas omnino nec alibi quam  
in Germania accepit, Lollianam et Varianam, sed Lollianam 20

3. sutor, -oris, *cobbler*.  
4. ignoto: i.e., where he was  
not known.

5. falso . . . nomine: i.e., it was  
not a true remedy (*antidotum*).

6. strophæ, *trick*.

9. scyphus, *cup, goblet*.

10. toxicum = venenum.

14. stupor = inscientia. — no-  
bilis: do NOT transl. *noble*.

17. caput = vita. — credere:  
sc. ei.

18. calceare, *to furnish with  
shoes. (calcare = to trample upon,  
spurn.)*

20. accepit: sc. Augustus.



maioris infamiae quam detrimenti, Varianam paene exitiabilem, tribus legionibus cum duce legatisque et auxiliis omnibus caesis. Hac nuntiata excubias per urbem indixit, ne quis tumultus existeret, et praesidibus provinciarum 5 propagavit imperium, ut a peritis et assuetis socii continerentur. Vovit et magnos ludos Iovi Optimo Maximo, si res publica in meliorem statum vertisset: quod factum Cimbrico Marsicoque bello erat. Adeo denique consternatum ferunt, ut per continuos menses barba capilloque summisso 10 caput interdum foribus inlideret, vociferans: 'Quintili Vare, legiones redde!' diemque cladis quotannis maestum haberit ac lugubrem.

181. *M. Cato vs. the Philosophers.*

M. Cato, consularis et censorius, publicis iam privatisque opulentis rebus, villas suas inexcultas et rudes, ne tectorio 15 quidem praelitas fuisse dicit ad annum usque aetatis suae septuagesimum. Atque ibi postea his verbis utitur: 'Neque,' inquit, 'mihi aedificatio neque vasum neque vestimentum ullum est manupretiosum, neque pretiosus servus, neque ancilla. Si quid est,' inquit, 'quod utar, utor, si non est, 20 egeo. Suum cuique per me uti atque frui licet.' Tum deinde addit 'Vitio vertunt, quia multa egeo, at ego illis, quia nequeunt egere.'

1. exitiabilis: infer meaning from exitium.

3. caesis: when on the third day of his running fight the annihilation of his army seemed certain, Varus committed suicide.

5. propagare, to enlarge.

8. consternatum: sc. Augustum; consternare, to alarm, afflict. (consternere = to stress over; overthrow.)

9. capillus, hair of head.

12. lugubris: infer meaning from lugere.

13. censorius, ex-censor.

14. inexcultus, unadorned. — tectorium, plaster, stucco.

15. praelinere (-lino), -litum.

17. vasum = vas, vasis.

18. manupretiosus, costly.

21. vitio vertere, to regard as a fault.

182. *National Supremacy in the Balance.*

There was war between Rome and Alba. When the two contending armies were ready to fight, the leaders agreed that, in order to avoid the shedding of so much blood, personal combat between the Romans and Albans should decide the issue.

Forte in duobus tum exercitibus erant trigemini fratres nec aetate nec viribus dispares. Horatios Curiatiosque fuisse satis constat, nec ferme res antiqua alia est nobilior. Cum trigeminis agunt reges, ut pro sua quisque patria dimi- cent ferro : ibi imperium fore, unde victoria fuerit. Nihil 5 recusatur ; tempus et locus convenit. Priusquam dimicarent, foedus ictum inter Romanos et Albanos est his legibus, ut, cuius populi cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri populo cum bona pace imperitaret.

Foedere icto trigemini, sicut convenerat, arma capiunt. 10 Feroces et suoapte ingenio et pleni adhortantium vocibus in medium inter duas acies procedunt. Considerant utrumque pro castris duo exercitus periculi magis praesentis quam curae expertes. Datur signum, infestisque armis, velut acies, terni iuvenes magnorum exercituum animos gerentes con- 15 currunt. Nec his nec illis periculum suum, publicum imperium servitiumque obversatur animo, futuraque ea deinde patriae fortuna, quam ipsi fecissent. Ut primo statim concursu increpuere arma micantesque fulsere gladii, horror ingens spectantis perstringit, et neutro inclinata spe torpe- 20 bat vox spiritusque.

Consertis deinde manibus cum iam non motus tantum corporum agitatioque anceps telorum armorumque, sed vul-

1. *trigeminus*, a triplet, one of three born at a birth.

3. *nec ferme*, and hardly (lit. nor almost = and almost not).

7. *foedus icere*, to ratify a treaty, make a league. — *lex*, (here) condition.

11. *pleni*: nom. plur.; transl. *influenced*.

18. *fecissent*: transl. *should determine*. — *Ut*: notice the mode of verb.

19. *increpare*, -crepui, to rattle, clash.

nera quoque et sanguis spectaculo essent, duo Romani, super alium alius, vulneratis tribus Albanis expirantes corruerunt. Ad quorum casum cum conclamasset gaudio Albanus exercitus, Romanas legiones iam spes tota, nondum tamen cura  
 5 deseruerat, exanimes vice unius, quem tres Curiatii circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit; ut universis solus nequam par, sic adversus singulos ferox. Ergo, ut segregaret pugnam eorum, capessit fugam, ita ratus secuturos. Iam aliquantum spatii ex eo loco, ubi pugnatum est, aufugerat,  
 10 cum respiciens videt magnis intervallis sequentes, unum haud procul ab sese abesse. In eum magno impetu rediit; et dum Albanus exercitus inclamat Curiatios, uti opem ferant fratri, iam Horatius caeso hoste victor secundam pugnam petebat. Tunc clamore Romani adiuvant militem suum, et  
 15 ille defungi proelio festinat. Prius itaque quam alter, qui nec procul aberat, consequi posset, et alterum Curiatium conficit. Iamque aequato Marte singuli supererant, sed nec spe nec viribus pares. Alterum intactum ferro corpus et geminata victoria ferocem in certamen tertium dabat, alter  
 20 fessum vulnere, fessum cursu trahens corpus, victusque fratrum ante se strage victori obicitur hosti. Nec illud proelium fuit. Romanus exsultans 'Duos,' inquit, 'fratrum Manibus dedi; tertium causae belli huiusce, ut Romanus Albano imperet, dabo.' Male sustinenti arma gladium  
 25 superne iugulo defigit, iacentem spoliatur. Romani ovantes ac gratulantes Horatium accipiunt eo maiore cum gaudio, quod prope metum res fuerat.

2. corruere, *to fall down.*

5. vicis (genit.; nom. wanting), *fate, misfortune.*

12. inclamare, *to call out to, exhort.*

16. et = etiam.

20. victus: partic.

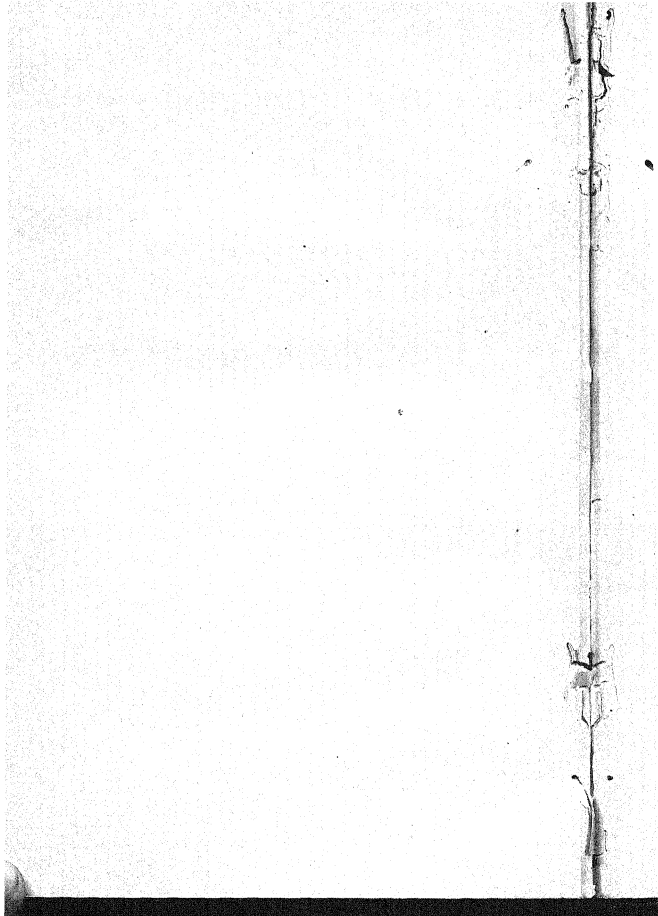
24. male = vix. — sustinenti:

sc. pronoun in dat.

25. superne, *from above.* — ovare, *exult.*

27. prope metum, *not far from (i.e., near to) panic.*

## ADVERTISEMENTS



# LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

	INTROD. PRICE.
<b>Allen and Greenough: Latin Grammar</b> . . . . .	\$1.20
New Caesar (seven books, with vocab., illust.) . . . . .	1.25
New Cicero (thirteen orations, with vocab., illust.) . . . . .	1.25
New Ovid (illust., with vocab.) 1.50; (without) . . . . .	1.12
Sallust's Catiline, 60 ets.; Cicero de Senectute . . . . .	.50
<b>Allen:</b> New Latin Method . . . . .	.90
Remnants of Early Latin . . . . .	.75
Germania and Agricola of Tacitus . . . . .	1.00
<b>Collar:</b> Gate to Caesar, 40 ets.; Gradatim . . . . .	.40
Practical Latin Composition . . . . .	1.00
<b>Collar and Daniell:</b> First Book in Latin . . . . .	1.00
Beginner's Latin Book . . . . .	1.00
<b>College Series of Latin Authors:</b>	
Allen's Annals of Tacitus, Books I-VI. . . . .	1.50
Bennett's Dialogus de Oratoribus of Tacitus . . . . .	.90
Greenough's Livy, Books I. and II. . . . .	1.25
Greenough and Peck's Livy, Books XXI. and XXII. . . . .	1.25
Kellogg's Brutus of Cicero . . . . .	1.25
Merrill's Catullus . . . . .	1.40
Smith's Odes and Epodes of Horace . . . . .	.90
<i>Editions of the text are issued separately. Each</i> . . . . .	.40
<b>Crowell:</b> Selections from the Latin Poets . . . . .	1.40
<b>Crowell and Richardson:</b> Bender's Roman Literature . . . . .	1.00
<b>Eaton:</b> Latin Prose: Livy . . . . .	.36
<b>Ferguson:</b> Questions on Caesar and Xenophon . . . . .	1.12
<b>Fowler:</b> Quintus Curtius . . . . .	.30
<b>Gepp and Haigh:</b> Latin-English Dictionary . . . . .	1.30
<b>Ginn &amp; Company:</b> Classical Atlas . . . . .	2.00
<b>Greenough:</b> Bucolics and six books of Aeneid (with vocab.) . . . . .	1.60
<i>For other parts of Vergil, see Catalogue.</i>	
Sight Pamphlets: No. I. Eutropius . . . . .	.20
<b>Gudeman:</b> Dialogus de Oratoribus of Tacitus . . . . .	2.75
<b>Halsey:</b> Etymology of Latin and Greek . . . . .	1.12
<b>Keep:</b> Essential Uses of the Moods . . . . .	.25
<b>Leighton:</b> Latin Lessons, 1.12; First Steps in Latin . . . . .	1.12
<b>Post:</b> Latin at Sight . . . . .	.90
<b>Preble and Parker:</b> Handbook of Latin Writing . . . . .	.50
<b>School Classics:</b> Collar's Aeneid, Book VII, 45ets.; with Translation . . . . .	.45
Tetlow's Aeneid, Book VIII, 45 ets.; without Vocab. . . . .	.35
<b>Shumway:</b> Latin Synonymes . . . . .	.30
<b>Stickney:</b> Cicero de Natura Deorum . . . . .	1.40
<b>Terence:</b> Adelphoe, Phormio, Heauton Timorumenos (1 vol.) . . . . .	1.00
<b>Tetlow:</b> Inductive Lessons . . . . .	1.12
<b>Thacher:</b> Madvig's Latin Grammar . . . . .	2.25
<b>Tomlinson:</b> Latin for Sight Reading . . . . .	1.00
<b>White:</b> Latin-Eng. Lexicon, 1.00; Eng.-Latin Lexicon . . . . .	1.50
Latin-English and English-Latin Lexicon . . . . .	2.25
<b>White and Waite:</b> Straight Road to Caesar . . . . .	1.12
<b>Whiton:</b> Auxilia Vergiliana; or, First Steps in Lat. Prosody . . . . .	.15
Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Caesar . . . . .	.40

Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introductory Price. The above list is not quite complete.

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

BOSTON, NEW YORK, AND CHICAGO.



# GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

		INTROD. PRICE
Allen :	Medea of Euripides . . . . .	\$1.00
Baird :	Greek-English Word-List . . . . .	.30
Collar and Daniell :	Beginner's Greek Composition . . . . .	.90
Flagg :	Hellenic Orations of Demosthenes . . . . .	1.00
	Seven against Thebes, \$1.00; Anacreontics . . . . .	.35
Goodwin :	Greek Grammar (Rev. Ed.) . . . . .	1.50
	Greek Moods and Tenses (Rev. Ed.) . . . . .	2.00
	Greek Reader . . . . .	1.50
Goodwin & White :	New Anabasis, with Illustrated Vocabulary . . . . .	1.50
	Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus . . . . .	1.50
Hogue :	The Irregular Verbs of Attic Greek . . . . .	1.50
Jebb :	Introduction to the Study of Homer . . . . .	1.12
Leighton :	New Greek Lessons . . . . .	1.20
Liddell & Scott :	Greek-English Lexicon, \$9.40; Abridged . . . . .	1.25
Parsons :	Cebes' Tablet . . . . .	.75
School Classics :	Gleason's Gate to the Anabasis . . . . .	.00
Seymour :	Homer's Iliad (School Edition) with Vocabulary, Books I.-III., \$1.25; Books I.-VI. . . . .	1.60
	Language and Verse of Homer. Paper, 60 cts.; Cloth . . . . .	.75
	Homeric Vocabulary, 75 cts.; Selected Odes of Pindar . . . . .	1.40
Sidgwick :	Greek Prose Composition . . . . .	1.50
Tarbell :	Philippics of Demosthenes . . . . .	1.00
Tyler :	Selections from Greek Lyric Poets . . . . .	1.00
White :	Beginner's Greek Book, \$1.50; First Lessons . . . . .	1.20
	Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles . . . . .	1.12
	Passages for Translation at Sight, Part IV. . . . .	.80
White & Morgan :	Anabasis Dictionary . . . . .	1.25
Whiton :	Orations of Lysias . . . . .	1.00
College Series.	Allen: Wecklein's Prometheus Bound of Aeschylus. Text and Note Edition. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Beckwith: Bacchantes of Euripides. Paper, 95 cts.; Cloth, \$1.25.	
	Bennett: Xenophon's Hellenica, Books V.-VII. Pa., \$1.10; Clo., \$1.40.	
	D'Ooge: Antigone of Sophocles. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Dyer: Plato's Apology and Crito. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Flagg: Euripides' Iphigenia among the Taurians. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Fowler: Thucydides, Book V. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Humphreys: Clouds of Aristophanes. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Lodge: Gorgias of Plato. Paper, \$1.35; Cloth, \$1.65.	
	Manatt: Xenophon's Hellenica, Books I.-IV. Pa., \$1.35; Clo., \$1.65.	
	Morris: Thucydides, Book I. Paper, \$1.35; Cloth, \$1.65.	
	Perrin: Homer's Odyssey, Books I.-IV. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40; Books V.-VIII., Cloth, \$0.00.	
	Richardson: Aeschines against Ctesiphon. Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Seymour: Homer's Iliad, Books I.-III. and Books IV.-VI. Each, Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Smith: Thucydides, Book III., Cloth, \$1.65. Book VII., Paper, \$1.10; Cloth, \$1.40.	
	Towle: Protagoras of Plato. Paper, 95 cts.; Cloth, \$1.25.	

Editions of the Text are issued separately. Each, 40 cents.

*Copies sent to Teachers for Examination, with a view to Introduction, on receipt of Introductory Price. The above list is not quite complete.*

**GINN & COMPANY, Publishers,**

Boston, New York, and Chicago.